(B2)

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 6 : G01N 21/76	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 99/27351 (43) International Publication Date: 3 June 1999 (03.06.99)

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US98/25295

(22) International Filing Date: 25 November 1998 (25.11.98)

(30) Priority Data:
08/978,439 25 November 1997 (25.11.97) US

(63) Related by Continuation (CON) or Continuation-in-Part (CIP) to Earlier Application
US 08/978,439 (CIP)
Filed on 25 November 1997 (25.11.97)

(71) Applicants (*for all designated States except US*): LOCKHEED MARTIN ENERGY RESEARCH CORPORATION [US/US]; 701 Scarboro Road, P.O. Box 2009, Oak Ridge, TN 37831-8243 (US). THE UNIVERSITY OF TENNESSEE RESEARCH CORPORATION [US/US]; Suite 403, 1534 White Avenue, Knoxville, TN 37996-1527 (US).

(72) Inventors; and
(75) Inventors/Applicants (*for US only*): SIMPSON, Michael, L. [US/US]; 7745 Nubbin Ridge Road, Knoxville, TN 37919 (US). SAYLER, Gary, S. [US/US]; Route 2, Box 60, McKinney Road, Blaine, TN 37709 (US). PAULUS, Michael, J. [US/US]; 1516 Moorgate Drive, Knoxville, TN 37922 (US).

(74) Agent: KITCHELL, Barbara, S.; Arnold White & Durkee, P.O. Box 4433, Houston, TX 77210 (US).

(81) Designated States: AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CU, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published
With international search report.
Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.

(54) Title: BIOLUMINESCENT BIOREPORTER INTEGRATED CIRCUIT

(57) Abstract

Disclosed are monolithic bioelectronic devices comprising a bioreporter and an OASIC. These bioluminescent bioreporter integrated circuits are useful in detecting substances such as pollutants, explosives, and heavy-metals residing in inhospitable areas such as groundwater, industrial process vessels, and battlefields. Also disclosed are methods and apparatus for environmental pollutant detection, oil exploration, drug discovery, industrial process control, and hazardous chemical monitoring.

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	**ES**	Spain	**LS**	Lesotho	**SI**	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	**FI**	Finland	**LT**	Lithuania	**SK**	Slovakia
AT	Austria	**FR**	France	**LU**	Luxembourg	**SN**	Senegal
AU	Australia	**GA**	Gabon	**LV**	Latvia	**SZ**	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	**GB**	United Kingdom	**MC**	Monaco	**TD**	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	**GE**	Georgia	**MD**	Republic of Moldova	**TG**	Togo
BB	Barbados	**GH**	Ghana	**MG**	Madagascar	**TJ**	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	**GN**	Guinea	**MK**	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	**TM**	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	**GR**	Greece			**TR**	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	**HU**	Hungary	**ML**	Mali	**TT**	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	**IE**	Ireland	**MN**	Mongolia	**UA**	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	**IL**	Israel	**MR**	Mauritania	**UG**	Uganda
BY	Belarus	**IS**	Iceland	**MW**	Malawi	**US**	United States of America
CA	Canada	**IT**	Italy	**MX**	Mexico	**UZ**	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	**JP**	Japan	**NE**	Niger	**VN**	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	**KE**	Kenya	**NL**	Netherlands	**YU**	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	**KG**	Kyrgyzstan	**NO**	Norway	**ZW**	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	**KP**	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	**NZ**	New Zealand		
CM	Cameroon			**PL**	Poland		
CN	China	**KR**	Republic of Korea	**PT**	Portugal		
CU	Cuba	**KZ**	Kazakstan	**RO**	Romania		
CZ	Czech Republic	**LC**	Saint Lucia	**RU**	Russian Federation		
DE	Germany	**LI**	Liechtenstein	**SD**	Sudan		
DK	Denmark	**LK**	Sri Lanka	**SE**	Sweden		
EE	Estonia	**LR**	Liberia	**SG**	Singapore		

DESCRIPTION

BIOLUMINESCENT BIOREPORTER INTEGRATED CIRCUIT

1.0 BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The present application is a continuation-in-part of United States Patent Application Serial No. 08/978,439, filed November 25, 1997, the entire contents of which is specifically incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. The United States government has rights in the present invention pursuant to grant number DE-FG05-94ER61870 from the Department of Energy and grant number F49620-89-C-0023 from the United States Air Force.

1.1 FIELD OF THE INVENTION

Electronic circuitry may be used to detect a luminescent response. In particular, one may use an optical application specific integrated circuit (OASIC), which combines analog signal conditioning, digital signal processing, and wireless transmission with a sensitive electro-optical detector. To achieve maximum sensitivity to the luminescent response of a bioreporter, an OASIC should be sensitive to light in the 400 nm to 700 nm (visible) range, should have low leakage current and low noise, and should have minimal sensitivity to changes in environmental factors such as temperature and humidity. Such devices may be manufactured via a standard complimentary-metal-oxide-semiconductor (CMOS) process on a single substrate.

1.2 DESCRIPTION OF RELATED ART

Biosensors are hybrid devices combining a biological component with an analytical measuring element. The biological component typically reacts and/or interacts with an analyte of interest producing a response that can be quantified by an electronic, optical, or mechanical transducer. The most common configuration uses immobilized biomolecules such as enzymes or antibodies as the biological component providing the needed selectivity. Another less utilized approach uses living microorganisms or sections of organs or tissues as the biological element. Originally these biosensors, sometimes referred to as whole-cell biosensors (Bousse, 1996), used

electrochemical transducers to detect the activity of growing cells (Buerk, 1993). Whole-cell biosensors have functioned in controlled environments but are not widely applicable, largely because of interference caused by growth on nutrients other than the target analyte.

Alternatively, molecular biological techniques have been used to produce cells or bioreporter strains that have much greater selectivity. Typically, DNA sequences that code for a specific promoter sequence are fused with gene(s) coding for reporter enzyme(s) and introduced into a host cell. When the target molecule is present, the reporter genes are expressed to produce the enzyme(s) responsible for the production of the measured signal. Thus, gene regulation and not consequences of microbial activity provides selectivity.

Some commonly used reporter enzymes are β-galactosidase *(lacZ)* and catechol 2,3-dioxygenase (*xylE*). Both of these systems use calorimetric detection methods, requiring cell destruction to produce the signal. In the past decade, bioluminescent bioreporters have become popular since the bioluminescent response is easily detected and the assay need not be destructive to the cells. Thus, the bioreporter can be continuously monitored in real time. Genetically engineered bioluminescent bioreporters using both eukaryotic and prokaryotic bioluminescence enzymes have been developed for detecting toxins and pollutants in water and soil and to assess the bioavailability and functional processes of pollutant biodegradation.

Bioluminescence of bioreporters has been detected by a number of different types of optical transducers, including photomultiplier tubes, photodiodes, microchannel plates, photographic films, and charge-coupled devices. In many of these applications, light is collected and transferred to the transducer using lenses, fiber optic cables, or liquid light guides. However, applications requiring small volumes, remote detection, or multiple parallel sensing necessitate a new type of instrumentation that is small and portable, yet maintains a high degree of sensitivity.

A bioluminescent bioreporter is an organism that is genetically engineered to produce light when a particular substance is metabolized. For example, bioluminescent (lux) transcriptional gene fusions may be used to develop light emitting reporter bacterial strains that are able to sense the presence, bioavailability,

and biodegradation of organic chemical pollutants such as naphthalene, toluene, and isopropylbenzene. In general, the *lux* reporter genes are placed under regulatory control of inducible degradative operons maintained in native or vector plasmids or integrated into the chromosome of the host strain.

Due to the widespread use of petroleum products and the current regulations requiring underground storage tanks to be upgraded, replaced or closed by December 1998 (Brinkley, 1997), the number of petroleum-contaminated sites has abounded. Of particular concern for drinking water quality are the more water-soluble components, benzene, toluene, ethylbenzene and xylenes (BTEX). Natural attenuation which relies on *in situ* biodegradation of pollutants has received a large amount of attention especially for petroleum contaminants (National Research Council, 1993). While microorganisms capable of biodegradation of BTEX compounds are usually present at these sites, there is a need to know whether or not conditions are favorable for biodegradation to occur.

Bioluminescent reporters have been widely used for the real time non-destructive monitoring of gene expression. Heitzer *et al.* (1992) developed a quantitative assay for naphthalene bioavailability and biodegradation using a *nah-lux* reporter strain HK44 constructed by King *et al.* (1990) containing a *lux* transposon (Tn4431) insertion in *nahG* of the lower naphthalene degradation operon. The *nah-lux* reporter was expanded for use as an on-line optical biosensor for application in groundwater monitoring (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994). Other *lux* fusions have been constructed for monitoring the expression of catabolic genes including those for degradation of isopropylbenzene (Selifonova *et al.*, 1996) and toluene (Burlage *et al.*, 1994; Applegate *et al.*, 1997).

In addition to catabolic gene fusions, a wide variety of genes and operons have been studied using *lux* fusions. Lux fusions have been constructed for monitoring heat shock genes expression (Van Dyk *et al.*, 1994; 1995), oxidative stress, (Belkin *et al.*, 1996), presence of Hg(II) (Selifonova, 1993) and alginate production (Wallace *et al.*, 1994). In all these cases, the *lux* fusions are plasmid-based and were constructed by placing the promoter of interest in front of the promoterless *lux* genes from *Vibrio fischeri* contained in pUCD615 (Rogowsky *et al.*, 1987).

1.3 DEFICIENCIES IN THE PRIOR ART

A need has arisen for a monolithic bioelectronic device that contains both a bioreporter and an OASIC, yet is very small, rugged, inexpensive, low power, and wireless. (A monolithic bioelectronic device is a device that contains biological and electrical components and that is constructed on a single substrate layer.) Such a bioluminescent bioreporter integrated circuit (BBIC) could detect substances such as pollutants, explosives, and heavy-metals residing in inhospitable areas such as groundwater, industrial process vessels, and battlefields. Applications for such a device include environmental pollutant detection, oil exploration, drug discovery, industrial process control, and hazardous chemical monitoring. The low cost of such sensors and the wide variety of deployment methods would allow a large number of them to be distributed over a wide area for very comprehensive coverage.

2.0 SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention overcomes these and other deficiencies in the prior art by providing novel devices and methods for the detection and quantitation of a particular substance in a sample using bioluminescent detector apparatus. In an overall and general sense, the BBIC devices of the invention generally comprise a substrate, a selectively permeable container affixed to the substrate capable of holding a bioreporter, a bioreporter capable of metabolizing a particular target substance to emit light contained within the selectively permeable container, and an integrated circuit (IC) on the substrate that comprises a phototransducer operative to generate an electrical signal in response to the emitted light, wherein the intensity of the electrical signal is indicative of the presence of, and also the concentration of, the target substance.

The apparatus may further comprise a layer of bioresistant/biocompatible material between the substrate and the container, such a layer of silicon nitride. The IC is preferably a CMOS IC, and the phototransducer is preferably a photodiode. The IC may also include a current to frequency converter and/or a digital counter. Additionally, the IC may also include one or more transmitters. Such transmitters

may be wireless, or conventionally wired. In a preferred embodiment, the apparatus also includes a central data collection station capable of receiving transmissions from the transmitter.

The apparatus may also contain one or more fluid or nutrient reservoirs and one or more microfluidic pumps on the substrate to provide nutrient means for the bioreporter organisms utilized with the apparatus. An exemplary bioreporter may comprise one or more prokaryotic or eukaryotic cells, such as one or more genetically-engineered bacterial, yeast, fungal, plant, or animal cells. Alternatively, the bioreporter may be one or more polypeptides, enzymes, enzyme complexes, or extracts from such genetically-engineered organisms. Exemplary bacterial cells include members of the *Proteobacteria*, including enteric organisms of the genera *Escherichia*, *Salmonella*, *Shigella*, *Proteus*, and the like, as well as aerobic bacteria such as those in the genus *Pseudomonas*. In illustrative embodiments, the inventors have demonstrated the facility of using bioreporters contained within species of *Pseudomonas* in detecting amounts of target analytes such a toluene and the like.

The selectively permeable container may comprise a polymer matrix, which may be capable of allowing a fluid such as a gas or a liquid to come into contact with the bioreporter. Preferably, the matrix is optically clear, or near-optically clear to permit transmission of the light through the matrix such that it can be detected by the detector. Optionally, the IC may contain a global positioning system (GPS). The BBIC may be prepared in a housing (*e.g.*, injection molded plastic) that would allow the free passage of the gas or liquid, yet block ambient light. Such a housing may comprise a flat-black finish and a maze-like passage-way. The liquid or gas could easily flow through the turns or bends in the passageway, while the ambient light would be greatly attenuated (due to the flat-black finish) at each turn.

A further embodiment of the invention is an apparatus for detecting a substance, such as a fluid, which comprises an IC including a phototransducer adapted to input an electrical signal into the circuit in response to light, a bioreporter capable of metabolizing the substance and emitting light consequent to such metabolism, the reporter adapted to contact the substance; and a transparent, biocompatible, and bioresistant separator positioned between the phototransducer and the bioreporter to

enable light emitted from the bioreporter to strike the phototransducer. The bioreporter may be a bacterium, fungal, yeast, plant, or animal cell, or alternatively, a nucleotide sequence which encodes a luminescent reporter molecule. The apparatus may also comprise a plastic matrix encasing the bioreporter and enabling contact between the substance and the bioreporter. Such a matrix may be permeable to the substance.

In one illustrative embodiment of the invention, there is provided an apparatus for detecting the concentration of a particular substance, wherein the bioreporter is a *Pseudomonas* cell. In particular, the bioreporter comprises *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44 cells that are capable of metabolizing particular target substances and upon metabolism of such target substances, the cells emit light which is then detected by the detector. The level of light intensity emitted by the cells is then quantitated, and the quantity of the target substance present in the sample is then determined. The apparatus also comprises at least one layer of silicon nitride between the substrate and the container; a fluid and nutrient reservoir and microfluidic pump on the substrate. The nutrient reservoir is necessary to permit the growth and survival of the organism so that its metabolic activities may be maintained and the target substance uptaken and metabolized by the organism. The pump permits the replenishment of the particular growth medium and the circulation of the growth medium within the microbial population. Naturally, the particular growth medium, nutrients, optimal growth temperature, pH, and other such culture conditions will vary depending upon the organism utilized as the bioreporter, but it will be within the skill of the ordinary artisan in the field to utilize the proper growth medium and proper growth conditions for the particular bioreporter organism(s) utilized in each particular BBIC.

Preferably the IC is a Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor (COMS) IC, and preferably the device includes at least one photodiode operative to generate a current in response to the emitted light, a current to frequency converter, a digital counter, and wireless transmitter; and, a central data collection station capable of receiving transmissions from the transmitter.

An additional aspect of the invention concerns a monolithic bioelectronic device for detecting a substance in a sample. This device generally comprises a

bioreporter capable of metabolizing the substance and emitting light consequent to such metabolism; and, a sensor capable of generating an electrical signal in response to the reception of the emitted light. Such a device may also include a transparent, bioresistant and biocompatible separator positioned between the bioreporter and the sensor.

A standard IC may be coated with one or more layers of insulating materials such as silicon dioxide or silicon nitride. This process is called passivation and serves to protect the surface of the chip from moisture, contamination, and mechanical damage. Although this coating is adequate for general purpose chips, BBICs may be used in a variety of possibly harsh environments for which the standard passivation process is inadequate. BBICs require a second coating that must be biocompatible and bioresistant, must protect the OASIC from chemical stresses, must be optically tuned to efficiently transmit the light from the material under test, must adhere to an oxide coating, must be pin-hole free, and must be able to be patterned in order to form openings over the bonding pads and whatever structures that might be needed to maintain the bioreporter or collect a sample.

While the individual components of the invention described herein may be obtained and assembled individually, the inventors contemplate that, for convenience, the components of the biosensor may be packaged in kit form. Kits may comprise, in suitable container means, one or more bioreporters and an IC including a phototransducer. The kit may comprise a single container means that contains one or more bioreporters and the IC including a phototransducer. Alternatively, the kits of the invention may comprise distinct container means for each component. In such cases, one container would contain one or more bioreporters, either pre-encapsulated or encapsulated in an appropriate medium disclosed herein, and another container would include the IC. When the bioreporter is pre-encapsulated, the kit may contain one or more encapsulation media. The use of distinct container means for each component would allow for the modulation of various components of the kits. For example, several bioreporters may be available to chose from, depending on the substance one wishes to detect. By replacing the bioreporter, one may be able to

utilize the remaining components of the kit for an entirely different purpose, thus allowing reuse of components.

The container means may be a container such as a vial, test tube, packet, sleeve, shrink wrap, or other container means, into which the components of the kit may be placed. The bioreporter also may be aliquoted into smaller containers, should this be desired.

The kits of the present invention also may include a means for containing the individual containers in close confinement for commercial sale, such as, *e.g.*, injection or blow-molded plastic containers into which the desired vials are retained.

Irrespective of the number of containers, the kits of the invention also may comprise, or be packaged with, an instrument for assisting with the placement of the bioreporter upon the IC. Such an instrument may be a syringe, pipette, forceps, or any other similar device.

In fact, virtually any suitable packaging and delivery of the required components are contemplated to be useful so long as the bioreporter remains functional. For example, long term storage of a bioreporter chip on a matrix such as alginate and a bacterial suspension may require refrigeration and prevention of desiccation for the organisms to remain viable.

The kit may comprise one or more distinct bioreporters and a single photodetector. For example, a kit for detecting naphthalene and toluene in a sample might comprise one bioreporter and a biofilm for detecting naphthalene and a distinct and/or separate biofilm for detecting toluene. The two biofilms may be applied sequentially to the sensor with each compound tested separately, or in certain circumstances, the biofilms may be applied in tandem to the chip and the compounds tested simultaneously. Various examples are given in FIG 9A, FIG. 9B, FIG. 9C, and FIG. 9D. Several biofilms may be placed in an array as shown in FIG. 9A, allowing several different bioreporters to be tested simultaneously. The inventors contemplate that the number of distinct biofilms may be infinite, provided that the signal produced by a single individual biofilm is detectable by the photodetector. Alternatively, as shown in FIG. 9B, each distinct biofilm may be applied sequentially to the chip. Furthermore, as shown in FIG. 9C, several bioreporters may be mixed within one or

more biofilms. Also, the biofilms may be layered as in FIG. 9D to allow several biofilms to be measured simultaneously.

3.0 BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The drawings form part of the present specification and are included to further demonstrate certain aspects of the present invention. The invention may be better understood by reference to one or more of these drawings in combination with the detailed description of specific embodiments presented herein.

FIG. 1. Shown is a perspective view of one embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 2. Shown is a the measured signal that resulted from a test of an illustrative BBIC of the present invention.

FIG. 3A. Shown is a high-quality photodetector that can be made using a standard N-well CMOS process.

FIG. 3B. Shown are two photodetector structures fabricated in a silicon-on-insulator CMOS process: on the left, a lateral PIN detector; on the left right, a device similar to left except that the junction is formed with a Schottky junction.

FIG. 4. Shown is the photodetector in FIG. 1 together with associated signal conditioning and processing circuitry on a single IC.

FIG. 5. Shown is a block diagram of one possible embodiment of the signal processing portion of the present invention.

FIG. 6. Shown is a side view of one embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 7A. Shown is a simple photodiode consisting of a P-diffusion layer, an N-well, and a P-substrate.

FIG. 7B. Shown is a circuit using a large area photodiode for efficient light collection, and a small-area diode in a feedback loop to supply the forward bias current that cancels out the photo-current.

FIG. 7C. Shown is a circuit using correlated double sampling (CDS) to minimize the effects of low frequency (flicker) amplifier noise as well as time or temperature dependent variations in the amplifier offset voltage.

FIG. 8. Shown is a bioreporter being supplied with water and nutrients.

FIG. 9A, FIG. 9B, FIG. 9C, and FIG. 9D. Shown are the conceptual diagrams depicting methods of utilizing multiple bioreporters. Different bioreporters are symbolized by A, B, C, etc. **FIG. 9A** shows a biofilm separated into a number of discreet sections with each section comprising a different bioreporter. **FIG. 9B** shows a number of biofilms, each comprising a different bioreporter. **FIG. 9C** shows multiple bioreporters combined within a single biofilm. **FIG. 9D** shows a biofilm comprising several discreet layers with each layer comprising a different bioreporter.

FIG. 10. Shows the sequence of primers used in site-directed mutagenesis to generate the modified mini-Tn*5* and the cloning vector, pLJS. Asterisks denote mismatches between the primer and the target sequence. *A* denotes an extra adenine which was inadvertently synthesized.

FIG. 11. Shown is a diagram for the construction of the mini-Tn*5*Km*tod-lux*. A/X and Nh/X represent *Avr*II-*Xba*I and *Nhe*I-*Xba*I heterologous cloning sites, respectively. Abbreviations: N, *Not*I; Sa, *Sal* I, X, *Xba*I.

FIG. 12. Shown is pLJS with unique restriction sites. Abbreviations: A, *Avr*II; Ac, *Acc*I; Ap, *Apa*I; B, *Bam*HI; Bs, *Bst*XI; C, *Cla*I; D, *Dra*II; E, *Eco*RI; Ea, *Eag*I; EV, *Eco*RV; H, *Hind*III; Hc, *Hinc*II; *K*, *Kpn*I; N, *Not*I; Nh, *Nhe*I; P, *Pst*I; S, *Spe*I; Sa, *Sal*I; Sc, *Sac*I; ScII, *Sac*II, Sm, *Sma*I; X, *Xba*I, Xh, *Xho*I.

FIG. 13. Shown is the bioluminescence response of TVA8 to increasing concentrations of toluene after 2 h exposure. Values are averages of three replicates and have been normalized to the cell density (OD_{546}).

FIG. 14. Shown are growth curves for batch cultures of TVA8 (circles) and F1 (triangles) grown on MSM with toluene vapor. Values are averages of three replicates and error bars represent one standard deviation.

FIG. 15. Shown are the bioluminescence and growth of TVA8 on toluene vapor under batch conditions. ○, □, Δ represent individual replicates of

bioluminescence readings over time. The closed squares represent the average optical density at 546 nm (OD_{546}) of three replicates.

FIG. 16. Shown is the construction of the *tod-lux* reporter plasmid, pUTK30. The 2.75-kb *Eco*R1-*Xba*I fragment from pDTG514 (Menn, 1991; Menn *et al.*, 1991) was cloned in front of the promoterless *lux* gene cassette in pUCD615 (Rogowsky *et al.*, 1987). Abbreviations: B, *Bam*HI; Gb, *Bgl*II; E, *Eco*R1; H, *Hind*II; K, *Kpm*I; Ps, *Pst*I; Pv, *Pvu*II; Sc, *Sac*I; S, *Sal*I; Sm, *Sma*I; X, *Xba*I.

FIG. 17. Shown is a diagram of the on-line DVR system used to monitor the co-metabolism of TCE.

FIG. 18. Shown is the bioluminescent response to varying concentrations of toluene (●) and JP4 jet fuel, expressed as mg L^{-1} toluene (▲) in growing cell assays after a 1.5-h exposure.

FIG. 19. Shown is the bioluminescent response to multiple and single exposures of 10 mg L^{-1} toluene by resting cells of *P. putida* B2 in batch studies. Symbols: O multiple exposure; Δ single exposure.

FIG. 20. Shown are the bioluminescence and co-metabolism of TCE by *P. putida* B2 in response to square wave perturbations of 10 mg L^{-1} toluene in 20-h cycles. Symbols: ● bioluminescence, ▲ TCE in effluent; ■ toluene in effluent, ---- TCE in feed, --- toluene in feed.

FIG. 21. Shown is an exploded, cutaway diagram of the reactor. Feed is distributed to the reactor cavity filled with cells immobilized in small alginate beads by channels etched in the reactor body and by the attached metal flit. An annular insert holds the 0.2 μM hydrophobic filter against the top metal flit with the effect of providing a significant uniform resistance to flow and providing a clean effluent for automatic injection into the HPLC. The resistance to flow caused by the filter was typically 50 psig for a clean filter.

FIG. 22. Shown are the absorption isotherms of naphthalene and sodium salicylate on calcium alginate. Naphthalene adsorbed linearly at experimental conditions, whereas salicylate did not appreciably partition.

FIG. 23. Shown are the actual and predicted concentrations of studies la-c and 4a-f. Error bars are shown with average values. The solid line represents the

model predictions using the least-squares reaction rate constant for the complete data set. The model is overall second order, first order in biomass and first order in salicylate, with a rate constant of 2.23×10^{-2} dm^3/g mol. The empirical data depicted are from Table 8.

FIG. 24. Shown are actual and predicted concentrations of studies 2a-c and 3a-f. Error bars are shown with data points. The solid line represents the model predictions using the least-squares reaction rate constant for the complete data set. The model is overall second order, first order in biomass and first order in salicylate, with a rate constant of 2.23×10^{-2} dm^3/g mol. The empirical data depicted are from Table 8.

FIG. 25. Shown is an unusual transient response observed when a clean bed of HK44 was "shocked" by the step addition of salicylate. The transient response may be caused by an initial imbalance resulting from the rapid transport of the inducer into the cell and an initial slow rate of degradation. After this initial transient behavior, light intensity mimicked the concentration of inducer. This transient behavior was only observed at the beginning of the study. Light intensity tracked subsequent changes in inducer concentration.

FIG. 26. Shown is the specific steady-state light emission by alginate-immobilized *P. fluorescens* HK44 as a function of estimated concentration inside the PBR at the light probe. Standard deviations are shown with the average values. The lines represent the average linear response for each data set.

FIG. 27. Shown is the response of HK44 to salicylate in a flow cell. Light intensity mimicked the rise and fall of salicylate concentration in the flow cell. HK44 was immobilized in alginate on a photodiode.

FIG. 28. Shown is the response of HK44 to naphthalene in a flow cell. Light intensity mimicked the rise and fall of naphthalene concentration in the flow cell. HK44 was immobilized in alginate on a photodiode. A larger lag in response was observed than in FIG. 27. The lag times may result from the way that naphthalene and salicylate are transported into the cell and consumed. Physical processes such as adsorption also have an effect on lag time.

FIG. 29A. and FIG. 29B. Shown is the normalized logarithmic light levels within 5h of induction. Light levels are expressed in nA cfu^{-1}. Responses due to induction with simple solution, SS (**FIG. 29A**) and complex solution, CS (**FIG. 29B**) are shown. No data are shown for the groundwater at pH 3-5, as no light was produced. *YPEG* represents yeast extract/peptone/glucose medium.

FIG. 30A and FIG. 30B. Shown is the percentage salicylate uptake by immobilized HK44. **FIG. 30A** shows uptake following induction with SS; **FIG. 30B** shows uptake following induction with CS.

FIG. 31. Shown is the operation of HK44 in alginate beads. The logarithm of the number of colony-forming units/alginate beads is shown.

FIG. 32A and FIG. 32B. Shown are rates of the bioluminescence reaction with SS (FIG. 32A) and CS (FIG. 32B). The normalized rates were calculated from the set of light data collected within the 5h post-induction period. This set of data was used in the calculation of the regression covariance.

FIG. 33. Shown is a schematic drawing of an IC mounted on a common honeybee as part of Oak Ridge National Laboratory research on micro-transmitters.

FIG. 34. Shown are a plurality of BBICs connected together in a distributed neural network.

FIG. 35. Shown is a single BBIC from the distributed neural network illustrated in FIG. 34.

FIG. 36A, FIG. 36B and FIG. 36C. An illustrative BBIC showing: (FIG. 36A) the optical application-specific integrated circuit (OASIC) mounted in a 40-pin ceramic chip canter and the enclosure for the cells; (FIG. 36B) the enclosure mounted on the chip, as configured for experiments; and (FIG. 36C) the enclosure with bioreporters on an agar plug. The O-ring is used to make a light-tight seal between the ceramic chip carrier and the bioreporter enclosure.

FIG. 37. The OASIC used in an illustrative embodiment of the BBIC. This device measures 2.2 × 2.2 mm and was fabricated in a standard complementary-metal-oxide-semiconductor integrated-circuit process.

FIG. 38. Minimum detectable concentration of toluene as a function of integration time for an illustrative BBIC employing the bioreporter *Pseudomonas putida* TVA8.

4.0 DESCRIPTION OF ILLUSTRATIVE EMBODIMENTS

The preferred embodiments of the present invention are illustrated in FIGs. 1–32 of the drawings, like numerals being used to refer to like and corresponding parts of the various drawings.

4.1 OVERVIEW OF THE SYSTEM

A photodiode is integrated into a semiconductor substrate along with signal processing electronics and either data storage electronics, electronics for transmission of the measured data via a hard-wired communication network or wireless communication electronics for remote read-out of the data. Key elements of the micro-luminometer system are a photodiode compatible with the semiconductor process employed to fabricate the accompanying electronics, novel low-noise electronics for the detection of low-level photosignals in the presence of electronic noise and communications electronics (wired or wireless) to transmit the data to a data processing and storage system.

FIG. 1 shows a perspective view of the present invention. The substance **20** that is being detected enters the BBIC **21** through the polymer matrix **22**. Once the substance is detected, the BBIC transmits a signal indicating the concentration of the substance to a central location.

FIG. 6 shows a side view of the present invention. The bioreporter is enclosed in polymer matrix **103**, which is separated from a photodetector **102** by a protective coating **101**. A single substrate **100** contains these elements as well as additional circuitry **104** that processes and transmits the signal.

FIG. 3A shows a high-quality photodetector made using a standard N-well CMOS process. The photodetector consists of two reverse biased diodes in parallel. The top diode is formed between the P+ active layer **45** and the N-well **46**, and the bottom diode is formed between the N-well **46** and the P-substrate **47**. The top diode

has good short wavelength light sensitivity (400 – 550 nm), while the bottom diode provides good long wavelength sensitivity (500 – 1100 nm). Thus, the complete diode is sensitive over the range from 400 to 1100 nm. The luminescent compound under test **41** is separated from the photodetector by a layer **40** of Si_3N_4 and a layer **42** of SiO_2.

FIG. 4 shows the photodetector **66** in FIG. 1 coupled with signal conditioning **65** and processing circuitry **64** on a single integrated circuit **60**. The purpose of the analog signal conditioning circuitry is to amplify and filter the relatively small photodetector signal so that it can be compared to a threshold, digitized, or modulated for transmission. While the effects of wideband noise can be reduced by integration of the signal, integration has a much weaker effect on $1/f$ noise. The effect of low frequency noise can be reduced by using correlated double sampling (CDS) in which two samples are taken within a short interval of time such that one sample consists of signal and noise and the other sample consists only of noise. The low frequency component of the noise is greatly attenuated in the difference of these two samples.

When the targeted substance reaches the bioreporter, it is metabolized and the bioreporter emits light with a wavelength of from between about 400 and about 700 nm (in the visible range). The bioreporter is encased in a polymer matrix that keeps the bioreporter positioned over the photodetector, allows the gas or fluid being sampled to reach the bioreporter, and allows the emitted light to reach the photodetector.

A block diagram showing one possible embodiment of the signal processing portion of the present invention is shown in FIG. 5. The photodetector in FIG. 3A is a photodiode **81** that responds to light by conducting a current to the ground. A current to frequency converter **82** converts this current into a sequence of pulses that are counted by a digital counter **83**. The number of pulses counted in a fixed period of time is directly proportional to the amount of light collected by the photodiode, which in turn is directly proportional to the concentration of the targeted substance. A wireless transmitter **84** then relays this measured concentration **85** to a central data collection station.

FIG. 8 shows the bioreporter being supplied with water and nutrients. A fluid and nutrient reservoir **141** is connected to a microfluidic pump **142** so that nutrient and fluid **144** may flow through the polymer matrix **143** enclosing the bioreporter. Each of these components can be constructed on a single substrate **140**.

An illustrative embodiment of the present invention was constructed by coupling *P. fluorescens* HK44, a naphthalene bioreporter, to an OASIC. The resulting BBIC device was exposed to naphthalene. The measured signal is shown in FIG. 2. The background reading is indicated from 0 to 10 min, and the reading during induced bioluminescence is shown from 10 to 20 min.

Additional circuitry may be included in the BBIC as required. For example, a BBIC may contain a Global Positioning Satellite system for determining the location of the sensor.

4.2 PHOTODETECTOR

The first element in the micro-luminometer signal processing chain is the photodetector. The key requirements of the photodetector are:

- Sensitivity to wavelength of light emitted by the bioluminescent or chemiluminescent compound under test;
- Low background signal (*i.e.*, leakage current) due to parasitic reverse biased diodes;
- Appropriate coating to prevent the materials in the semiconductor devices from interfering with the bioluminescent or chemiluminescent process under study and to prevent the process under study from degrading the performance of the micro-luminometer; and,
- Compatibility with the fabrication process used to create the micro-luminometer circuitry.

Two photodetector configurations that satisfy these requirements are described below. It should be understood, however, that alternative methods of constructing such a photodetector can be used by one skilled in the art without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined in the claims.

In the first embodiment, the photodetector is fabricated in a standard N-well CMOS process. Shown in FIG. 3A, this detector is formed by connecting the PN junction between the PMOS active region and the N-well in parallel with the PN junction between the N-well and the P-type substrate. The resulting detector is sensitive to light between approximately 400 nm and approximately 1100 nm, a range that encompasses the 450 – 600 nm emission range of most commonly used bioluminescent and chemiluminescent compounds or organisms. In order to meet the requirement that the device have a low background signal, the device is operated with a zero bias, setting the operating voltage of the diode equal to the substrate voltage. The photodiode coating may be formed with a deposited silicon nitride layer or other material compatible with semiconductor processing techniques.

In the second photodetector embodiment, the detector is fabricated in a silicon-on-insulator (SOI) CMOS process. The internal leakage current in an SOI process is two to three orders of magnitude lower than in standard CMOS due to the presence of a buried oxide insulating layer between the active layer and the substrate. Two photodetector structures are envisioned in the SOI process. The first structure, shown on the left of FIG. 3B, consists of a lateral PIN detector where the P-layer is formed by the P+ contact layer, the I (intrinsic) region is formed by the lightly doped active layer, and the N region is formed by the N+ contact layer of the SOI CMOS process. The spectral sensitivity of this lateral detector is set by the thickness of the active layer, which may be tuned for specific bioluminescent and chemiluminescent compounds.

The second structure, shown on the right side of FIG. 3B, is similar to the first except that the junction is formed with a Schottky junction between a deposited cobalt silicide ($CoSi_2$) or other appropriate material layer and the lightly doped active layer.

The inventors contemplate that other photodetector configurations may be envisioned in silicon or other semiconductor processes meeting the criteria set forth above.

4.3 LOW NOISE ELECTRONICS

The low noise electronics are the second element in the micro-luminometer signal processing chain. The requirements for the low noise electronics are:

- Sensitivity to very low signal levels provided by the photodetector;
- Immunity to or compensation for electronic noise in the signal processing chain;
- Minimum sensitivity to variations in temperature;
- Minimum sensitivity to changes in power supply voltages (for battery powered applications);
- For some applications the electronics must have sufficient linearity and dynamic range to accurately record the detected signal level; and,
- In other applications the electronics must simply detect the presence of a signal even in the presence of electronic and environmental noise.

Three embodiments that satisfy these requirements are considered below. It should be understood, however, that alternative methods of detecting small signals while satisfying these requirements can be used without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention as defined in the claims.

FIG. 7A schematically shows the first approach to the detection of very small signals. This device uses a P-diffusion/N-well photodiode, a structure compatible with standard CMOS IC processes, in the open circuit mode with a read-out amplifier (fabricated on the same IC with the photodiode). The luminescent signal generates electron-hole pairs in the P-diffusion and the N-well. The photo-generated electrons in the P-diffusion are injected into the N-well, while the photo-generated holes in the N-well are injected into the P-diffusion. The N-well is tied to ground potential so that no charge builds up in this region. However, since the P-diffusion is only attached to the input impedance of a CMOS amplifier (which approaches infinity at low frequencies), a positive charge collects in this region. Thus, the voltage on the P-diffusion node begins to rise.

As the P-diffusion voltage begins to rise, the P-diffusion/N-well photodiode becomes forward biased, thereby producing a current in a direction opposite to the photo-generated current. The system reaches steady-state when the voltage on the P-

diffusion node creates a forward bias current exactly equal in magnitude (but opposite in polarity) to the photo-current. If this PN junction has no deviations from the ideal diode equation, then the output voltage is

$$V_{out} = V_t \ln(I_p / (A\, I_s) + 1), \qquad (1)$$

where V_t is the thermal voltage (approximately 26 mV at room temperature), I_p is the photo-current, A is the cross-sectional area of this PN junction, and I_s is the reverse saturation current for a PN junction with unit cross-sectional area. The value of I_s depends greatly on the IC process and material parameters.

Two major error currents are present in PN junctions operating at low current density: recombination current and generation current. Except at very low temperatures, free carriers are randomly created in the PN junction space charge region. Since this region has a high field, these thermally excited carriers are immediately swept across the junction and form a current component (generation current) in the same direction as the photo-current. Carriers crossing the space-charge region also have a finite chance of recombining. This creates another current component (recombination current) in the opposite direction of the photo-current. Therefore, taking into account these error currents, equation (1) becomes

$$V_{out} = V_t \ln((I_p + I_g - I_r) / (A\, I_s) + 1). \qquad (2)$$

This output voltage is a function of parameters that are generally beyond our control. However, we do have control over the junction area, A. Unfortunately, to make our output signal larger, we want a small A, while we want a large A for a high quantum efficiency (QE).

FIG. 7B shows a second microluminometer embodiment that satisfies both of these needs. This circuit uses a large area photodiode for efficient light collection, but uses a small-area diode in a feedback loop to supply the forward bias current that cancels out the photo-current. Once again, the amplifier and feedback diodes are fabricated on the same IC as the photodiode. For this circuit,

$$V_{out} = 3\, V_t \ln((I_p + I_g - I_r) / (A_{fb} I_s) + 1), \qquad (3)$$

where A_{fb} is the small cross-sectional area of the feedback diode. More than one diode is used in the feedback path to make the output signal large compared to the DC offset of any subsequent amplifier stages. This technique allows efficient collection of the light with a large-area photodiode, yet produces a large output voltage because of the small-area diodes in the feedback path.

The feedback circuit of FIG. 7B maintains the photodiode at zero bias. With no applied potential, the recombination and generation currents should cancel. Equation (3) becomes

$$V_{out} = 3\ V_t \ln((I_p / (A_{fb} I_s)) + 1) \tag{4}$$

if the smaller recombination and generation currents in the smaller feedback diodes are neglected.

The principal advantages of the second micro-luminometer embodiment shown in FIG. 7B are:

- The SNR is totally determined by the photodiode. Noise from the small diode and amplifier are negligible;
- Diodes can be added in the feedback path until the signal level at the output of the amplifier is significant compared to offset voltages (and offset voltage drift) of subsequent stages;
- This method is completely compatible with standard CMOS processes with no additional masks, materials, or fabrication steps;
- This detection scheme can be fabricated on the same IC with analog and digital signal processing circuits and RF communication circuits; and,
- Measurement can be made without power applied to the circuit. Power must be applied before the measurement can be read, but the measurement can be obtained with no power.

A third micro-luminometer implementation shown in FIG. 7C uses correlated double sampling (CDS) to minimize the effects of low frequency (flicker) amplifier noise as well as time or temperature dependent variations in the amplifier offset voltage. As shown in FIG. 7C, a photodiode with capacitance C_d and noise power

spectral density S_i is connected to an integrating preamplifier with feedback capacitance C_f and input noise power spectral density S_v through a set of switches that are controlled by the logical level of a flip-flop output. When the flip-flop output is low, the switches are positioned so that the photocurrent flows out of the preamplifier, causing the output voltage of the integrator to increase. When the low-pass filtered integrator output voltage exceeds a threshold, V_{HI}, the upper comparator "fires," setting the flip-flop and causing its output to go high. The detector switches change positions, causing current to flow into the integrating amplifier, which in turn causes the amplifier output voltage to decrease. When the integrator output goes below a second threshold, V_{LO}, the lower comparator "fires," resetting the flip-flop and causing the output to go low again. The process repeats itself as long as a photocurrent is present.

The average period of the output pulse, Δt, is given by:

$$\Delta t = \frac{2C_f\left(V_{HI} - V_{LO}\right)}{I_P}, \tag{5}$$

where V_{HI} and V_{LO} are the threshold voltages of the comparators and I_p is the diode photocurrent. Two noise sources contribute to error in the measured value of Δt. S_i is the input noise current power spectral density associated primarily with the photodiode, and S_v is the input noise voltage power spectral density associated primarily with the preamplifier. The diode noise is given by:

$$S_i = 2q(2I_s + I_p) \quad \left(\frac{A^2}{Hz}\right), \tag{6}$$

where I_s is the photodiode reverse saturation current and I_p is the photocurrent. As the photocurrent approaches zero, the noise power spectral density approaches a finite value of $4qI_s$ A^2/Hz. The noise voltage S_v of the preamplifier is determined by its design and has units of V^2/Hz.

The transfer function from the point where the diode noise is introduced to the output of the integrator is given approximately by:

$$H_i(\omega) \approx \left(\frac{1}{sC_f}\right)\left(\frac{\omega_1}{s+\omega_1}\right), \tag{7}$$

where ω_1 is the corner frequency of the integrating amplifier and $s = j\omega$. Ignoring for the moment the effect of the switches, the transfer function from the point where the amplifier noise is introduced to the output of the integrator is given approximately by:

$$H_v(\omega) \approx \left(\frac{C_f + C_d}{C_f}\right)\left(\frac{\omega_1}{s+\omega_1}\right). \tag{8}$$

The switches perform a correlated double sampling function which attenuates the noise which appears below the switching frequency of the output pulse string. The transfer function of a correlated double sampling circuit is approximated to first order by the expression:

$$H(\omega) \approx \left(\frac{s}{s + 2/\Delta t}\right), \tag{9}$$

where Δt is the average period of the output pulse string. Thus, taking into account the switches, the transfer function from the point where the amplifier noise is introduced to the output of the integrator is approximately given by:

$$H_v(\omega) \approx \left(\frac{C_f + C_d}{C_f}\right)\left(\frac{\omega_1}{s+\omega_1}\right)\left(\frac{s}{s + 2/\Delta t}\right). \tag{10}$$

This is an important result because the effective zero introduced in the noise voltage transfer function reduces the effect of the flicker noise of the amplifier. This is particularly useful in CMOS implementations of the micro-luminometer where flicker noise can have a dominant effect.

The mean squared output noise at the output of the integrator is

$$v_n^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S_v(H_v * H_v) + S_i(H_i * H_i) d\omega , \tag{11}$$

and the RMS noise voltage is then given by:

$$\sigma_v = \sqrt{v_n^{\,2}}. \tag{12}$$

The RMS error in the measured period is determined by the slope of the integrated signal and the noise at the output of the integrator following the relationship

$$\sigma_t = \frac{\sigma_v}{dv/dt} \tag{13}$$

or, approximately,

$$\sigma_t \approx \frac{\sigma_v}{\frac{(V_{HI} - V_{LO})}{\Delta t}}. \tag{14}$$

The error in measuring Δt may be reduced by collecting many output pulses and obtaining an average period. The error in the measured average pulse period improves proportionately to the square root of the number of pulses collected, such that:

$$\bar{\sigma}_t \approx \frac{\sigma_v}{\frac{(V_{HI} - V_{LO})}{\Delta t}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \tag{15}$$

or

$$\bar{\sigma}_t \approx \frac{\sigma_v}{\frac{(V_{HI} - V_{LO})}{\Delta t}} \sqrt{\frac{t_{meas}}{\Delta t}} \tag{16}$$

where t_{meas} is the total measurement time.

Thus, implementation of the micro-luminometer has the following advantages:

- The low frequency "flicker" noise of the amplifier is reduced by a correlated double sampling process; and,
- Ideally, the accuracy of the measured photocurrent may be improved without limit by acquiring data for increasing periods of time.

Of course, practical limitations imposed by the lifetime and stability of the signals produced by the luminescent compound under test will ultimately determine the resolution of this implementation.

4.4 READ-OUT ELECTRONICS

Several methods of reading out the data from the micro-luminometer may be used. These include:

- Generation of a DC voltage level proportional to the photocurrent;
- Generation of a DC current level proportional to the photocurrent;
- Generation of a logical pulse string whose rate is proportional to the photocurrent;
- On-chip implementation of an analog to digital converter that reports a numerical value proportional to the photocurrent;
- On-chip implementation of a serial or parallel communications port that reports a number proportional to the photocurrent;
- Implementation of an on-chip wireless communication system that reports the value of the photocurrent;
- Generation of a logical flag when the photocurrent exceeds a predefined level; and,
- Generation of a radio-frequency signal or beacon when the photocurrent exceeds a predefined level.

4.5 NUTRIENT DELIVERY SYSTEM

FIG. 8 illustrates one method of providing nutrients to the living bioreporters on BBICs. The concept has three main components:

- a fluid and nutrient reservoir;
- a microfluidic pump; and,
- a BBIC.

The fluid and nutrient reservoir and microfluidic pump on a different substrate than the BBIC may be easier to implement. However, an implementation that places all three components on the same monolithic substrate could also be used.

The reservoir is simply a container that holds water with the appropriate nutrients in solution. This can be implemented on-chip by depositing a thick oxide over the fluidic area of the chip and defining a reservoir space by photolithographic

methods. To increase the volume of such an implementation, an external container (*e.g.*, a plastic pipette tip) may be attached to the on-chip reservoir with an appropriate epoxy.

Microfluidic pumps have been realized in numerous manners including peristaltic pumps, conducting polymer pumps, and electro-osmotic pumps. For an on-chip pump, an electro-osmotic pump is most compatible. This device consists of a capillary that has been etched into the Si and then coated with a thermally-grown oxide. A top plate is required for proper pump operation. Polydimethylsiloxane (PDMS), sold under the brand name Sylgard 184, (Dow Corning) may be used to coat the top plate. Glass or quartz slides may also be used to form the top plate. The capillary could be tens of microns wide and tens of microns in depth. The length can be several centimeters, but on a BBIC would likely be on the order of a few mm. To activate the pump, a voltage is placed across the capillary. In capillary electrophoresis applications, voltages as high as 1 kV are required for rapid separations. However, in this application, we would expect operation at only a few volts.

A gravity pump could be also be used where the floor of the capillary is at a slant. The end of the capillary that supplies the fluid to the bioreporters could be restricted to regulate the flow of fluid or an actuator (*e.g.*, a micro-cantilever) could gate fluid flow. In practice, any pump that is small, low power, and can operate from low voltages could be used either on-chip or on a separate substrate.

4.6 BIOSENSORS FOR CHEMICAL AND BIOLOGICAL AGENTS

A "biosensor" generally refers to a small, portable, analytical device based on the combination of recognition biomolecules with an appropriate transducer, and which detects chemical or biological materials selectively and with high sensitivity. A treatise on this subject is given by Paddle (1996), from which the following is excerpted:

They may be used to detect toxic substances from a variety of sources such as air, water or soil samples or may be used to monitor enclosed environments. They also may be formulated as catheters for monitoring drug and metabolite levels *in vivo*, or as probes for the analysis of toxic substances, drugs or metabolites in samples of

say, blood and urine. Some biosensors with these potentials are currently either commercially available or undergoing commercial development (Scheller *et al.*, 1989; Guilbault and Schmidt, 1991; Alvarez-Icaza and Bilitewski, 1993).

A great number of review articles (*e.g.*, North, 1985; Frew and Hill, 1987; Schultz, 1987; Guilbault and Luong, 1988; Blum *et al.*, 1989; Arnold, 1990; Bluestein and Chen, 1990; Danielsson, 1990; Hendry *et al.*, 1990; Karube, 1990; Kimura and Kuriyama, 1990, Rechnitz and Ho, 1990; Wingard, 1990; Tien *et al.*, 1991; Kauffman and Guilbault, 1992; Grate *et al.*, 1993) and several books (*e.g.*, Janata, 1989; Turner *et al.*, 1989; Hall, 1991) have been written describing both the theoretical and practical aspects of individual biosensor technologies and their development.

4.6.1 BIOSENSORS

In biosensors, different biological elements may be combined with various kinds of transducers provided that the reaction of the biological element with the substrate can be monitored. Table 1 lists the transducer types available and biological elements that have been combined with them to form a biosensor (Scheller *et al.*, 1989; Guilbault and Schmid, 1991; Swain, 1992; Alvarez-Icaza and Bilitewski, 1993; Griffiths and Hall, 1993).

4.6.1.1 BIOLOGICAL COMPONENT OF BIOSENSORS

The biological components of biosensors are not only responsible for the selective recognition of the analyte, but also the generation of the physio-chemical signal monitored on the transducer and, ultimately, the sensitivity of the final device (Lowe *et al.*, 1990). They can be divided into two distinct categories: catalytic and non-catalytic (Scheller *et al.*, 1989; Griffiths and Hall, 1993). The catalytic group includes enzymes, micro-organisms and tissues. Devices incorporating these elements are appropriate for monitoring metabolites in the millimolar to micromolar range and can be used for continuous monitoring. The non-catalytic or affinity class biological component comprises antibodies (or antigens), lectins, receptors and nucleic-acids which are more applicable to 'single use' disposable devices for measuring hormones, steroids, drugs, microbial toxins, cancer markers and viruses at

concentrations in the micromolar to picomolar range. More recently, a hybrid configuration of biosensor has been introduced which combines the attributes of both the high affinity ('irreversible') binding of an antibody or DNA/RNA probe with the amplification characteristics of an enzyme. These systems are capable of monitoring analytes in the picomolar to femtomolar (10^{-12} - 10^{-15} M) concentration range and lower (Lowe *et al.*, 1990).

TABLE 1

BIOSENSOR COMBINATIONS

Biological Element	Transducer: Type	Transducer: Examples
	Electrochemical	
Enzymes Receptors Micro-organisms Plant and animal tissues Enzyme-labeled antibodies	Potentiometric	Redox and ion-selective electrodes (*e.g.*, the pH electrode as well as CO_2, NH_3, and sulfide electrodes based on this), FETS and LAPS (Kimura and Kuriyama, 1990; Kauffman and Guilbault, 1992; Owicki *et al.*, 1994)
Enzymes Micro-organisms Plant and animal tissues Enzyme-labeled antibodies	Amperometric	Clark oxygen electrode, mediated enzyme electrodes (Hendry *et al.*, 1990; Kauffman and Guilbault, 1992)
Enzymes Bilayer lipid membranes*	Conductimetric	Pt or Au electrodes for determining the change in conduction of the solution due to the generation of ions (Janata, 1989)
	Optical	
Receptors Antibodies	Fluorescence	Optrode, photodiodes, fiber-optic, bulk phase detection (Arnold, 1990).
Enzymes	Luminescence	Optrode, photodiodes, fiber-optic, bulk phase detection (Blum *et al.*, 1989)

TABLE 1 - CONTINUED

Biological Element	Transducer: Type	Transducer: Examples
	Optical - cont.	
Receptors Antibodies	Evanescent wave	Coated fiber-optic, fluorescence detection (Bluestein and Chen, 1990)
Antibodies Antigens Enzymes Nucleic-acids	Surface plasmon resonance	BIAcore (coated gold or silver layer on glass support), small haptens must be measured indirectly by displacement assay (Fägerstam and O'Shannessy, 1993)
Antibodies Antigens Enzymes Nucleic-acids	**Acoustic**	Piezoelectric devices (Grate *et al.*, 1993)
Enzymes Micro-organisms Cells	**Calorimetric**	Thermistor or thermopile (Danielsson, 1990)

*Man-made.

4.6.1.2 ENZYMES

From an analytical point of view, the most important classes of enzymes are the oxidoreductases, which catalyse the oxidation of compounds using oxygen or NAD, and the hydrolases, which catalyse the hydrolysis of compounds (Enzyme Nomenclature 1978, 1979; Alvarez-Icaza and Bilitewski, 1993). Most successful biosensors exploit enzymes as the biological recognition/response system because of the range of transducible components such as protons, ions, heat, light, electrons and mass that can be exchanged as part of their catalytic mechanism (Lowe, 1989). This catalytic activity is controlled by pH, ionic strength, temperature and the presence of co-factors. Enzyme stability is usually the deciding factor in determining the lifetimes of enzyme based biosensors (typically between 1 day and 1 or 2 months [Rechnitz and Ho, 1990]).

Organelles (*e.g.*, mitochondria, chloroplasts) whole cells (*e.g.*, bacteria) or tissue sections from animal or plant sources have been used as biocatalytic packages in biosensors for a large range of metabolites of clinical interest. Together with the numerous enzymes present are all the other necessary components needed to convert substrates into products in an environment which has been optimized by evolution (Scheller *et al.*, 1989; Rechnitz and Ho, 1990). The major drawback of the use of such systems is their multi-enzyme behavior, which results in decreased substrate specificity. However, sometimes such behavior can work to advantage because by merely changing the external experimental conditions different substrates can be measured with the same biocatalytic material. The appropriate use of enzyme inhibitors, activators and stabilizing agents also can be used to enhance the selectivity and lifetimes of tissue based biosensors (Rechnitz and Ho, 1990).

4.6.1.3 RECEPTORS

Naturally occurring receptors are non-catalytic proteins that span cell membranes, extending into both the extracellular and intracellular spaces. They are involved in the chemical senses, such as olfaction and taste, as well as in metabolic and neural biochemical pathways. Within the organism they act as links in cell-cell communication by reversibly binding specific neuro-transmitters and hormones

liberated from other cells for the purpose of conveying messages through the target cell's membrane to initiate or diminish its cellular activity. They are also the binding sites for many drugs and toxins. Two methods have been defined by which binding of a transmitter molecule to the extracellular side of the receptor leads to modification of intracellular processes.

Attempts at using neuroreceptors as the recognition element in biosensors have largely been restricted to the nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (n-AChR) which can be isolated from the electric organ of the electric eel or ray in relatively large quantities. The unavailability of other receptors for biosensor use is no doubt a reflection of the fact that they are normally only present in small amounts in tissues and are unstable once removed from their natural lipid membrane environment. However, the products of receptor DNA expression in foreign cell lines may produce proteins useful for biosensor applications, yet not fully identical to the native starting material (Wingard, 1990). The n-AChR and associated ion channel complex bind several naturally occurring toxins.

4.6.1.4 ANTIGENS AND ANTIBODIES

An antigen is any molecular species that can be recognized by an animal organism as being foreign to itself and which therefore triggers the defensive mechanism known as the immune response. This recognition has a lower molecular weight cut-off of ~10,000 Da (Van Emon and Lopez-Avila, 1992). In natural circumstances such antigens are typically proteins or lipopolysaccharides at the surfaces of viruses, bacteria and microfungi, or at the surfaces of cells and in solution in blood or tissues of other species or even of different individuals of the same species. Foreign DNA or RNA is also antigenic as is material of plant origin.

An antibody (Ab) is a molecule produced by animals in response to the antigen and which binds to the latter specifically. Antibodies to smaller molecular weight environmental contaminants such as pesticides, herbicides, microbial toxins and industrial chemicals can be made after first covalently attaching the latter to a carrier protein such as bovine serum albumin (BSA) or keyhole limpet haemocyanin (KLH) (Van Emon and Lopez-Avila, 1992). The small molecular component of the

resultant conjugate, which has been modified for antigenic recognition, is known as a hapten. A host of other biotoxins of microbial, plant and animal origin are either antigenic or can be rendered antigenic by the formation of hapten-protein conjugates.

In mammals, two distinct types of molecule are involved in the recognition of antigens. These are the proteins called immunoglobulins which are present in the serum and tissue fluids, and the antigen receptors on the surface of specialized blood cells-the T-lymphocytes. It is the immunoglobulins, or antibodies, whose selective and tight binding characteristics for antigens are made use of in immunological methods of analysis. In most higher animals the immunoglobulins, or antibodies, fall into five distinct classes, namely IgG, IgA, IgM, IgD and IgE. These differ from each other in size, charge, amino acid composition and carbohydrate content. They all appear to be glycoproteins but the carbohydrate content ranges from 2-3% for IgG to 12-14% for the others. The basic structure of all immunoglobulin molecules is a Y-shaped unit consisting of two identical light polypeptide chains and two identical heavy polypeptide chains linked together by disulfide bonds. The amino terminal ends of the 'arms' of the Y are characterized by sequence variability and are the antigen binding sites. IgG is the exclusive anti-toxin class of antibody. IgM is a pentamer of five Y-shaped units whose role appears to be to complex infectious organisms (Turner, 1989).

The binding of antigen to antibody at transducer surfaces can be measured directly and indirectly. Binding can be detected by conjugating the antigen or antibody to a fluorescent label (Anis *et al.*, 1992; Ogert *et al.*, 1992; Lee and Thompson, 1993).

4.6.1.5 NUCLEIC ACIDS

The specific sequence of bases along a strand of DNA and the unique complementary nature of the pairing between the base pairs (adenine and thymine or cytosine and guanine) of adjacent strands in the double helix is the basis of biodiversity. The ability of a single-stranded nucleic-acid molecule to recognize and bind (hybridize) to its complementary partner in a sample has been used in genetic analyses and may also be used in a biosensor.

Sample preparation might include one or more of the following steps: (a) extraction of the DNA from the cells in a sample; (b) preparation of the DNA in single stranded form; and (c) increasing the total amount of DNA present by the use of the polymerase chain reaction (PCR™) (Saiki *et al.*, 1985).

Another possibility is to use DNA binding proteins such as RNA polymerases, promoters, repressors and restriction enzymes, which exhibit the ability to bind to a specific DNA sequence in a double-stranded form to develop a biosensor (Kung *et al.*, 1990; Downs, 1991). Since the preparation of the DNA in single-stranded form and its subsequent hybridization would not be required, the method would involve a shorter sample preparation time.

4.6.2 VIRUSES, BACTERIA AND FUNGI

Viruses are small cellular parasites that cannot reproduce by themselves. They attach to cells *via* specific receptors and this partly determines which cell types become infected. The particular cells that are infected are ultimately destroyed because of the complex biochemical disturbances accompanying the intracellular replication of the virus. Viruses contain either single-stranded or double-stranded RNA or DNA which is generally surrounded by an outer shell of one or more virus-specific proteins or glycoproteins. In some viruses there is a further external envelope that consists mainly of lipids but also contains some virus-specific proteins. It is the surface coat proteins which are the viral antigens that trigger the immune response and antibody production (Rook, 1989; Darnell *et al.*, 1990). Viruses (and bacteria) have a large number of antigenic determinants on their surfaces and therefore each organism can bind a number of antibody units. This results in a considerable increase in stability of virus-antibody complexes over hapten-antibody complexes (up to 10^3 - 10^4-fold depending on the antibody) (Darnell *et al.*, 1990).

TABLE 2

PATHOGENIC ORGANISMS

Viruses	Bacteria	Fungi
Variola virus	*Rickettsia prowazecki*	*Coccidioides immitis*
Chikungunya virus	*Rickettsia rickettsi*	*Histoplasma capsulatum*
Eastern encephalitis virus	*Rickettsia tsutsugamushi*	*Norcardia asteroides*
Venezuelan encephalitis virus	*Bacillus anthracis*	
Western encephalitis virus	*Francisella (Pasteurellas tularensis)*	
Dengue virus	*Pasteurella pestis*	
Yellow fever virus	*Brucella melitensis. B. suis*	
Japanese encephalitis virus	*Coxiella burnetti*	
Russian spring-summer encephalitis virus	*Salmonella typhi*	
Argentine haemorrhagic fever virus	*Salmonella paratyphi*	
Lassa fever virus	*Vibrio comma*	
Lymphocyte choriomeningitis virus	*Corynebacterium diphtheria*	
Bolivian haemorrhagic fever virus	*Actinobacillus mallei*	
Crimean-Congo haemorrhagic fever virus	*Pseudomonas pseudomallei*	

TABLE 2 - CONTINUED

Viruses	Bacteria	Fungi
Haantan (Korean haemorrhagic fever) virus	*Mycobacterium tuberculosis*	
Rift Valley fever virus		
Marburg virus		
Ebola virus		
Hepatitis A virus		

Certain pathogenic bacteria synthesize and secrete exotoxins as part of the mechanism underlying the specific symptoms of the diseases that they produce. Examples of these proteins that poison or kill susceptible mammalian cells are the *Shigella dysenteria* toxin. *Staph. aureus* enterotoxin, tetanus toxin and *botulinum* neurotoxin, as well as the toxins produced by *Bacillus anthracis* and *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*. Other pathogenic bacteria (the *Salmonella* and *Brucella* species in Table 2) liberate toxins when they are lysed. These toxins are components of the bacterial cell wall and are conjugates of protein, lipid and carbohydrate and have been called endotoxins. Both types of toxin are antigenic. The different types of bacteria have different cell wall structures. All types (Gram-positive (G+), gram-negative (G-) and mycobacteria) have an inner cell membrane and a peptidoglycan wall. Gram-negative bacteria also have an outer lipid bilayer in which lipopolysaccharide is sometimes found. The outer surface of the bacterium may also contain fimbriae or flagellae, or be covered by a protective capsule. Proteins and polysaccharides in these structures can act as targets for the antibody response.

Some fungi are pathogenic to man because they can invade the body tissues and proliferate there rather than because they liberate toxins. Three of these are listed in Table 2. Other fungi are dangerous to humans because of the toxins they produce and liberate into the environment. A particular example of the latter is the fusarium species which produce tricothecene mycotoxins mentioned.

Fungi may be utilized as a bioreporter. The inventors contemplate the use of fungi (*e.g.*, yeast) in methods of the present invention. For example, yeast strains may be constructed by methods similar to those disclosed herein for bacterial strains in which the yeast will emit a bioluminescent signal in response to an environmental signal or stress.

4.6.3 BIOSENSORS BASED ON ANTIBODIES

There is a wide range of toxins for which enzyme based and receptor based strategies are not available for the development of biosensors. However, assuming that one can obtain the appropriate antibodies, antibody based biosensors are possible

for several of toxic chemicals and probably all toxins and pathogenic micro-organisms listed in Table 2.

One of the continuing challenges in the development of immunosensors is to be able to immobilize the antibodies at high density on the appropriate surface whilst still maintaining their functional configuration and preventing stearic hindrance of the binding sites. This has led to the use of self-assembling long chain alkyl membrane systems (SAMSs) on glass or silica and gold surfaces. The terminal functional groups on each chain are designed to react with specific groups on antibodies or antibody fractions to form a uniform geometrical array of antigen binding sites (Bhatia *et al.*, 1989; Zull *et al.*, 1994; Mrksich and Whitesides, 1995).

The stability of the immobilized antibodies is also a critical factor for future immunosensor research. A problem associated with this is that if on-site preparation of the system for the capture process is required, this may take several h and methods need to be developed to speed this up. A further requirement which is more important for immobilization on piezoelectric devices is the need to reduce non-specific protein binding to the sensor surface (Ahluwalia *et al.*, 1991). Perhaps one approach to this problem would be to use a SAM formed from a mixture of two long chain alkane thiolates, one with a terminal functional group for reaction with, for example, Fab-SH groups and the other presenting a short oligomer of ethylene glycol to resist the non-specific adsorption of protein at the membrane surface (Zull *et al.*, 1994; Mrksich & Whitesides, 1995). This mixture would allow the possibility of controlling the spacing of the covalently bound antibody fraction and optimizing specific antigen binding.

Most immunological reactions are essentially irreversible because of their large association constants (K_as of 10^5 -10^9 M^{-1}). The K_aS are composed of large forward [k_1] and small reverse [k_{-1}] rate constants ranging from 10^7 to 10^9 M^{-1} s^{-1} and 10^2 to 10^{-4} s^{-1}, respectively (Barnard and Walt, 1992). Developing antibodies with sufficiently fast antigen dissociation rates to allow reversible measurements in real time (North, 1985; Roe, 1992) could lead to continuous or at least sequential measurements of the antigen without the need to replace the antibody or reverse the binding by the use of chaotropic solutions (Blanchard *et al.*, 1990; Wijesuriya *et al.*,

1994b). Recombinant technology will eventually allow the production of antibodies with new binding properties.

An approach that may solve the problem of irreversibility is the development of catalytic antibodies (Lerner *et al.*, 1991; Haynes *et al.*, 1994). Haptens designed to mimic the stereoelectronic features of transition states can induce antibodies capable of catalysing a wide range of chemical transformations, ranging from simple hydrolyses of esters and amides to reactions that lack physiological counterparts or are normally disfavored (Lerner *et al.*, 1991; Haynes *et al.*, 1994). (A potentiometric biosensor employing catalytic antibodies as the molecular recognition element has been described by Blackburn *et al.*, (1990)). Thus, it is conceivable that if catalytic antibodies can be obtained for toxic chemicals and toxins, then biosensors for these substances, capable of continuous unattended running and not requiring fresh supplies of sensor material, could become a reality.

Alternatively, to utilize immunoreactions effectively in sensor design, the problem of irreversibility may be circumvented by creating a reservoir that passively releases immunoreagents to the sensing region of the particular device. Controlled release polymers have been used for this purpose (Barnard and Walt, 1992).

Recently, Wallace and co-workers (*see* Sadik *et al.*, 1994) have suggested that because the Ag-Ab interaction is a multi-step process (involving a variety of different molecular interactions according to the distance apart), it is possible that specificity is locked in at the early stages and irreversibility occurs at the later stages, accompanied by conformational changes. Wallace *et al.* have presented evidence of this specificity from pulsed amperometric measurements using a platinum electrode coated in a film of polypyrrole containing the antibody to thaumatin. During continuous pulsing of the applied potential in the presence of the antigen, rapid and reversible peaks of current were observed whose height was directly proportional to the antigen concentration. Injections of BSA and other proteins gave very much reduced responses but it is not clear how much of this was due to the difference in charge structure.

4.6.4 NUCLEIC-ACID BASED BIOSENSORS

The time consuming preparative steps in gene probe assays make it difficult for them to be considered as the basis of biosensors for the on-site detection of pathogenic micro-organisms. The major time-consuming steps are the DNA isolation and amplification (PCR™) procedures and the hybridization detection step. Recently, it has been possible to grow ss-DNA on the surface of optical fibers and to detect the hybridization process with complementary ss-DNA in a sample by using the fluorescence of ethidium bromide trapped in the double-stranded regions of the bound DNA (Piunno *et al.*, 1994). Besides, the possibility of being very sensitive and selective, such a nucleic-acid based sensor has some advantages over antibody based biosensors. First, it is more stable and can be stored for longer periods. Also, the probe can be repeatedly regenerated for further use by a short immersion in hot buffer. Future work will be directed towards developing appropriate DNA probes for pathogenic bacteria and fungi (Smith *et al.*, 1994) and improving the methods for immobilizing them on the sensor surface. Detection of hybridization may be further improved by covalently immobilizing the ds-DNA sensitive fluorescent dye directly onto the immobilized ss-DNA at the glass fiber surface (Piunno *et al.*, 1994).

4.7 MICROBIAL BIOSENSORS USING MULTIPLEXED BIOLUMINESCENCE

Whole cell biosensors are occasionally limited in terms of sensitivity and reliability by signal transduction mechanisms and by non-specific interferences. Wood and Gruber provide an overview of accurately transducing the genetic sensing mechanisms of microbes into readily measurable signals(Wood and Gruber, 1996, incorporated herein by reference). Because living cells are a steady-stage ensemble of hundreds of interacting biochemical pathways, it is difficult to change one path without affecting, to some degree, several other paths. With many potential internal and external conditions being sensed simultaneously in a cell, a change in any one could affect the cellular physiology in unpredictable ways. In a microbial sensor, this may lead to unreliable and even uninterpretable responses to environmental conditions.

In order to make microbial sensors more reliable, it may be necessary to ascertain the effects of the non-specific stimuli and eliminate them from the sensor response. The cumulative effect of the non-specific stimuli may be determined through a second signal transducer (not coupled to the specific genetic sensing system) to yield an internal control signal. This control signal may serve as a dynamic baseline with which to compare the target signal. Since the signal from the target transducer indicates the effects of both the targeted and non-specific stimuli, by normalizing the target signal to the control signal, the effects of the target stimulus can be isolated.

This may be achieved by employing two genetic reporters which behave essentially identically within the complex chemical environment of living cells, but yield readily differentiated signals. In preferred embodiments, the two genetic reporters may include bioluminescence proteins with subtle modifications between each other, such modifications providing a distinguishable change in emission wavelength. Examples of such variants are commercially available for many bioluminescent reporters and are well known in the art (*see e.g.*, Wood, 1990).

Multiple bioluminescent reporters may be constructed to be translated into a single polypeptide comprising two functional bioreporters. If the excitation spectrum of one or more of the reporters is within the range of emission of one or more of the other reporters in such a construct, the inventors contemplate that this "hybrid" construct would provide increased signal strength or sensitivity or both over those comprising only one reporter. Alternatively, as opposed to being translated into a single polypeptide, the multiple bioluminescent reporters may be translated into separate polypeptides that encode regions that allow the reporters to bind each other or be in close proximity to each other. "Close proximity" refers to an arrangement where the emission of one or more of the reporters is able to excite one or more of the other reporters.

4.8 RECOMBINANT VECTORS EXPRESSING BIOLUMINESCENCE GENES

One important embodiment of the invention is a recombinant vector which comprises one or more nucleic-acid segments encoding one or more bioluminescence

polypeptides. Such a vector may be transferred to and replicated in a prokaryotic or eukaryotic host, with bacterial cells being particularly preferred as prokaryotic hosts, and yeast cells being particularly preferred as eukaryotic hosts.

In other embodiments, it is contemplated that certain advantages will be gained by positioning the coding DNA segment under the control of a recombinant, or heterologous promoter. As used herein, a recombinant or heterologous promoter is intended to refer to a promoter that is not normally associated with a DNA segment encoding a crystal protein or peptide in its natural environment. Such promoters may include promoters normally associated with other genes or promoters isolated from any bacterial, viral, eukaryotic, or plant cell, or both. Naturally, it will be important to employ a promoter that effectively directs the expression of the DNA segment in the cell type, organism, or even animal, chosen for expression. The use of promoter and cell type combinations for protein expression is generally known to those of skill in the art of molecular biology (*see, e.g.*, Sambrook *et al.*, 1989). The promoters employed may be constitutive, or inducible, and can be used under the appropriate conditions to direct high level expression of the introduced DNA segment.

In a first embodiments, the recombinant vector comprises a nucleic-acid segment encoding one or more bioluminescence polypeptides. Highly preferred nucleic-acid segments are the *lux* genes of *Vibrio fischerii, luxCDABE*. Other preferred nucleic-acid segments may include, but are not limited to, those that encode firefly luciferase, the luciferase proteins of other beetles, Dinoflagellates (*Gonylaulax; Pyrocystis*), Annelids (*Dipocardia*), Molluscs (*Lativa*), Crustacea (*Vargula; Cypridina*), green fluorescent protein of *Aequorea victoria* or *Renilla reniformis*, or luciferases from other organisms capable of bioluminescence.

In a second embodiment of the present invention, the inventors contemplate a recombinant vector comprising a nucleic-acid segment encoding one or more enzymes that are capable of producing a reaction that yields a luminescent product or a product that can be directly converted to a luminescent signal. For example, substrates of the commonly used β-galactosidase and alkaline phosphatase enzymes are commercially available that are luminescent (chemiluminescence) when converted by the respective enzyme.

In a third embodiment of the present invention, the inventors contemplate a recombinant vector comprising a nucleic-acid segment encoding one or more enzymes that are capable of producing a reaction that yields a chromogenic product or a product that can be directly converted to a chromogenic signal. For example, substrates of the commonly used β-galactosidase and alkaline phosphatase enzymes are commercially available that are chromogenic when converted by the respective enzyme. Appropriate choices of excitation and emission wavelengths will permit detection and quantization of the chromogenic compound. Likewise, any chromogenic substrate for which a standard assay is available for spectrophotometric analysis should be readily adaptable for use in the present methods.

In a fourth embodiment of the present invention, the inventors contemplate a recombinant vector comprising a nucleic-acid segment encoding one or more polypeptides that expressed on the surface of a cell, or secreted from a cell. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleic-acid segment encodes one or more TnPhoA polypeptides. In another embodiment, the polypeptide is an antigen of an antibody that, directly or indirectly, is capable of producing a bioluminescent, chemiluminescent, or chromogenic product.

In each of the above embodiments, the recombinant vector may comprise the gene of interest operatively linked to a promoter that is responsive to an environmental factor. In a preferred embodiment the *lux* genes of *Vibrio fischerii*, *luxCDABE* are operatively linked to the *tod* operon within a mini-Tn*5* transposon. However, the inventors contemplate that virtually any recombinant vector that allows the nucleic-acid segment of interest to be operatively linked to a promoter that is responsive to an environmental factor may be used. Useful recombinant vectors may include, but are not limited to, the gene of interest operatively linked to a promoter that is responsive to an environmental factor by means of gene fusions, operon fusions, or protein fusions.

Another important embodiment of the invention is a transformed host cell which expresses one or more of these recombinant vectors. The host cell may be either prokaryotic or eukaryotic, and particularly preferred host cells are those which express the nucleic-acid segment or segments comprising the recombinant vector

which encode the *lux* genes of *Vibrio fischerii, luxCDABE*. Bacterial cells are particularly preferred as prokaryotic hosts, and yeast cells are particularly preferred as eukaryotic hosts

A wide variety of ways are available for introducing a nucleic-acid segment expressing a polypeptide able to provide bioluminescence or chemiluminescence into the microorganism host under conditions which allow for stable maintenance and expression of the gene. One can provide for DNA constructs which include the transcriptional and translational regulatory signals for expression of the nucleic-acid segment, the nucleic-acid segment under their regulatory control and a DNA sequence homologous with a sequence in the host organism, whereby integration will occur or a replication system which is functional in the host, whereby integration or stable maintenance will occur or both.

The transcriptional initiation signals will include a promoter and a transcriptional initiation start site. In preferred instances, it may be desirable to provide for regulative expression of the nucleic-acid segment able to provide bioluminescence or chemiluminescence, where expression of the nucleic-acid segment will only occur after release into the proper environment. This can be achieved with operators or a region binding to an activator or enhancers, which are capable of induction upon a change in the physical or chemical environment of the microorganisms. For translational initiation, a ribosomal binding site and an initiation codon will be present.

Various manipulations may be employed for enhancing the expression of the messenger RNA, particularly by using an active promoter, as well as by employing sequences, which enhance the stability of the messenger RNA. The transcriptional and translational termination region will involve stop codon or codons, a terminator region, and optionally, a polyadenylation signal (when used in a Eukaryotic system).

In the direction of transcription, namely in the 5′ to 3′ direction of the coding or sense sequence, the construct will involve the transcriptional regulatory region, if any, and the promoter, where the regulatory region may be either 5′ or 3′ of the promoter, the ribosomal binding site, the initiation codon, the structural gene having an open reading frame in phase with the initiation codon, the stop codon or codons,

the polyadenylation signal sequence, if any, and the terminator region. This sequence as a double strand may be used by itself for transformation of a microorganism host, but will usually be included with a DNA sequence involving a marker, where the second DNA sequence may be joined to the expression construct during introduction of the DNA into the host.

By "marker" the inventors refer to a structural gene which provides for selection of those hosts which have been modified or transformed. The marker will normally provide for selective advantage, for example, providing for biocide resistance (*e.g.*, resistance to antibiotics or heavy metals); complementation, so as to provide prototrophy to an auxotrophic host and the like. One or more markers may be employed in the development of the constructs, as well as for modifying the host.

Where no functional replication system is present, the construct will also include a sequence of at least 50 basepairs (bp), preferably at least about 100 bp, more preferably at least about 1000 bp, and usually not more than about 2000 bp of a sequence homologous with a sequence in the host. In this way, the probability of legitimate recombination is enhanced, so that the gene will be integrated into the host and stably maintained by the host. Desirably, the nucleic-acid segment able to provide bioluminescence or chemiluminescence will be in close proximity to the gene providing for complementation as well as the gene providing for the competitive advantage. Therefore, in the event that the nucleic-acid segment able to provide bioluminescence or chemiluminescence is lost, the resulting organism will be likely to also have lost the complementing gene, and the gene providing for the competitive advantage, or both.

A large number of transcriptional regulatory regions are available from a wide variety of microorganism hosts, such as bacteria, bacteriophage, cyanobacteria, algae, fungi, and the like. Various transcriptional regulatory regions include the regions associated with the *trp* gene, *lac* gene, *gal* gene, the λ_L and λ_R promoters, the *tac* promoter. See for example, U. S. Patent No. 4,332,898; U. S. Patent No. 4,342,832; and U. S. Patent No. 4,356,270. The termination region may be the termination region normally associated with the transcriptional initiation region or a different

transcriptional initiation region, so long as the two regions are compatible and functional in the host.

Where stable episomal maintenance or integration is desired, a plasmid will be employed which has a replication system which is functional in the host. The replication system may be derived from the chromosome, an episomal element normally present in the host or a different host, or a replication system from a virus which is stable in the host. A large number of plasmids are available, such as pBR322, pACYC184, RSF1010, pR01614, and the like. See for example, Olson *et al.,* 1982; Bagdasarian *et al.*, 1981, and U. S. Patent Nos. 4,356,270, 4,362,817, 4,371,625, and 5,441,884, each of which is incorporated specifically herein by reference.

The desired gene can be introduced between the transcriptional and translational initiation region and the transcriptional and translational termination region, so as to be under the regulatory control of the initiation region. This construct will be included in a plasmid, which will include at least one replication system, but may include more than one, where one replication system is employed for cloning during the development of the plasmid and the second replication system is necessary for functioning in the ultimate host. In addition, one or more markers may be present, which have been described previously. Where integration is desired, the plasmid will desirably include a sequence homologous with the host genome.

The transformants can be isolated in accordance with conventional ways, usually employing a selection technique, which allows for selection of the desired organism as against unmodified organisms or transferring organisms, when present. The transformants then can be tested for bioluminescence or chemiluminescence activity. If desired, unwanted or ancillary DNA sequences may be selectively removed from the recombinant bacterium by employing site-specific recombination systems, such as those described in U.S. Patent No. 5,441,884, specifically incorporated herein by reference.

4.9 METHODS FOR PREPARING ANTIBODIES

In another aspect, the present invention contemplates an antibody that is immunoreactive with a polypeptide. Reference to antibodies throughout the specification includes whole polyclonal and monoclonal antibodies (mAbs), and parts thereof, either alone or conjugated with other moieties. Antibody parts include Fab and $F(ab)_2$ fragments and single chain antibodies. The antibodies may be made *in vivo* in suitable laboratory animals or *in vitro* using recombinant DNA techniques. In a preferred embodiment, an antibody is a polyclonal antibody.

Briefly, a polyclonal antibody is prepared by immunizing an animal with an immunogen comprising a polypeptide of the present invention and collecting antisera from that immunized animal. A wide range of animal species can be used for the production of antisera. Typically an animal used for production of anti-antisera is a rabbit, a mouse, a rat, a hamster or a guinea pig. Because of the relatively large blood volume of rabbits, a rabbit is a preferred choice for production of polyclonal antibodies.

Antibodies, both polyclonal and monoclonal, specific for given polypeptides may be prepared using conventional immunization techniques, as will be generally known to those of skill in the art. A composition containing antigenic epitopes of particular polypeptides can be used to immunize one or more experimental animals, such as a rabbit or mouse, which will then proceed to produce specific antibodies against the polypeptide. Polyclonal antisera may be obtained, after allowing time for antibody generation, simply by bleeding the animal and preparing serum samples from the whole blood.

The amount of immunogen composition used in the production of polyclonal antibodies varies upon the nature of the immunogen, as well as the animal used for immunization. A variety of routes can be used to administer the immunogen (subcutaneous, intramuscular, intradermal, intravenous and intraperitoneal). The production of polyclonal antibodies may be monitored by sampling blood of the immunized animal at various points following immunization. A second, booster injection, also may be given. The process of boosting and titering is repeated until a suitable titer is achieved. When a desired level of immunogenicity is obtained, the

immunized animal can be bled and the serum isolated and stored or the animal can be used to generate mAbs (below), or both.

One of the important features provided by the present invention is a polyclonal sera that is relatively homogenous with respect to the specificity of the antibodies therein. Typically, polyclonal antisera is derived from a variety of different "clones," *i.e.* B-cells of different lineage. mAbs, by contrast, are defined as coming from antibody-producing cells with a common B-cell ancestor, hence their "mono" clonality.

When peptides are used as antigens to raise polyclonal sera, one would expect considerably less variation in the clonal nature of the sera than if a whole antigen were employed. Unfortunately, if incomplete fragments of an epitope are presented, the peptide may very well assume multiple (and probably non-native) conformations. As a result, even short peptides can produce polyclonal antisera with relatively plural specificities and, unfortunately, an antisera that does not react or reacts poorly with the native molecule.

Polyclonal antisera according to present invention is produced against peptides that are predicted to comprise whole, intact epitopes. It is believed that these epitopes are therefore more stable in an immunologic sense and thus express a more consistent immunologic target for the immune system. Under this model, the number of potential B-cell clones that will respond to this peptide is considerably smaller and, hence, the homogeneity of the resulting sera will be higher. In various embodiments, the present invention provides for polyclonal antisera where the clonality, *i.e.*, the percentage of clone reacting with the same molecular determinant, is at least 80%. Even higher clonality up to 90% or 95% or greater is contemplated.

To obtain mAbs, one would also initially immunize an experimental animal, often preferably a mouse, with a polypeptide-containing composition. After a period of time sufficient to allow antibody generation, one would obtain a population of spleen or lymph cells from the animal. The spleen or lymph cells can then be fused with cell lines, such as human or mouse myeloma strains, to produce antibody-secreting hybridomas. These hybridomas may be isolated to obtain individual clones which can then be screened for production of antibody to the desired polypeptide.

Following immunization, spleen cells are removed and fused, using a standard fusion protocol with plasmacytoma cells to produce hybridomas secreting mAbs against a polypeptide of interest. Hybridomas which produce mAbs to the selected antigens are identified using standard techniques, such as ELISA and Western blot methods. Hybridoma clones can then be cultured in liquid media and the culture supernatants purified to provide the polypeptide of interest-specific mAbs.

Of particular utility to the present invention are antibodies tagged with a fluorescent or enzymatic molecule. Methods of tagging antibodies are well known to those of skill in the art and a large number of such antibodies are available commercially. Fluorescent tags include, but are not limited to, fluorescein, phycoerythrin, and Texas red. Enzymatic tags, include, but are not limited to, alkaline phosphatase and horseradish peroxidase.

4.10 NUCLEIC-ACID SEGMENTS

The present invention also concerns nucleic-acid segments, that can be isolated from virtually any source, that are free from total genomic DNA and that encode bioluminescence peptides disclosed herein. Nucleic-acid segments encoding these peptide species may prove to encode proteins, polypeptides, subunits, functional domains, and the like of *lux*-related or other non-related gene products. In addition these nucleic-acid segments may be synthesized entirely *in vitro* using methods that are well-known to those of skill in the art.

As used herein, the term "nucleic-acid segment" refers to a nucleic-acid molecule that has been isolated free of total genomic nucleic-acid of a particular species. Therefore, a nucleic-acid segment encoding a bioluminescence peptide refers to a nucleic-acid segment that contains a bioluminescence polypeptide coding sequences yet is isolated away from, or purified to be free from, total genomic nucleic-acid of the species from which the nucleic-acid segment is obtained. Included within the term "nucleic-acid segment," are nucleic-acid segments and smaller fragments of such segments, and also recombinant vectors, including, for example, plasmids, cosmids, phagemids, phage, viruses, and the like.

Similarly, a nucleic-acid segment comprising an isolated or purified bioluminescence gene refers to a nucleic-acid segment which may include, in addition to peptide encoding sequences, certain other elements such as, regulatory sequences, isolated substantially away from other naturally occurring genes or protein-encoding sequences. In this respect, the term "gene" is used for simplicity to refer to a functional protein-, polypeptide- or peptide-encoding unit. As will be understood by those skilled in the art, this functional term includes both genomic sequences, cDNA sequences and smaller engineered gene segments that express, or may be adapted to express proteins, polypeptides or peptides. In a preferred embodiment, the nucleic-acid segment comprises an operon of *lux* genes.

"Isolated substantially away from other coding sequences" means that the gene, or operon, of interest, in this case, an operon encoding bioluminescence polypeptides, forms the significant part of the coding region of the DNA segment, and that the DNA segment does not contain large portions of naturally-occurring coding DNA, such as large chromosomal fragments or other functional genes or cDNA coding regions. Of course, this refers to the DNA segment as originally isolated, and does not exclude genes or coding regions later added to the segment by the hand of man.

It will also be understood that amino acid and nucleic-acid sequences may include additional residues, such as additional N- or C-terminal amino acids or 5′ or 3′ sequences, and yet still be essentially as set forth in one of the sequences disclosed herein, so long as the sequence meets the criteria set forth above, including the maintenance of biological protein activity where protein expression is concerned. The addition of terminal sequences particularly applies to nucleic-acid sequences that may, for example, include various non-coding sequences flanking either of the 5′ or 3′ portions of the coding region or may include various internal sequences, *i.e.*, introns, which are known to occur within genes.

The nucleic-acid segments of the present invention, regardless of the length of the coding sequence itself, may be combined with other DNA sequences, such as promoters, polyadenylation signals, additional restriction enzyme sites, multiple cloning sites, other coding segments, and the like, such that their overall length may

vary considerably. It is therefore contemplated that a nucleic-acid fragment of almost any length may be employed, with the total length preferably being limited by the ease of preparation and use in the intended recombinant DNA protocol.

The various probes and primers designed around the disclosed nucleotide sequences of the present invention may be of any length. By assigning numeric values to a sequence, for example, the first residue is 1, the second residue is 2, etc., an algorithm defining all primers can be proposed:

$$n \text{ to } n + y$$

where n is an integer from 1 to the last number of the sequence and y is the length of the primer minus one, where $n + y$ does not exceed the last number of the sequence. Thus, for a 10-mer, the probes correspond to bases 1 to 10, 2 to 11, 3 to 12, and so on. For a 15-mer, the probes correspond to bases 1 to 15, 2 to 16, 3 to 17, and so on. For a 20-mer, the probes correspond to bases 1 to 20, 2 to 21, 3 to 22, and so on.

It will also be understood that this invention is not limited to the particular nucleic-acid sequences which encode peptides of the present invention. Recombinant vectors and isolated DNA segments may therefore variously include the peptide-coding regions themselves, coding regions bearing selected alterations or modifications in the basic coding region, or they may encode larger polypeptides that nevertheless include these peptide-coding regions or may encode biologically functional equivalent proteins or peptides that have variant amino acids sequences.

The DNA segments of the present invention encompass biologically-functional equivalent peptides. Such sequences may arise as a consequence of codon redundancy and functional equivalency that are known to occur naturally within nucleic-acid sequences and the proteins thus encoded. Alternatively, functionally-equivalent proteins or peptides may be created *via* the application of recombinant DNA technology, in which changes in the protein structure may be engineered, based on considerations of the properties of the amino acids being exchanged. Changes designed by humans may be introduced through the application of site-directed mutagenesis techniques, *e.g.*, to introduce improvements to the bioluminescence of the protein or to test mutants in order to examine activity at the molecular level.

If desired, one may also prepare fusion proteins and peptides, *e.g.*, where the peptide-coding regions are aligned within the same expression unit with other proteins or peptides having desired functions, such as plastid targeting signals or "tags" for purification or immunodetection purposes (*e.g.*, proteins that may be purified by affinity chromatography and enzyme label coding regions, respectively).

Recombinant vectors form further aspects of the present invention. Particularly useful vectors are contemplated to be those vectors in which the coding portion of the DNA segment, whether encoding a full length protein or smaller peptide, is positioned under the control of a promoter. The promoter may be in the form of the promoter that is naturally associated with a gene encoding peptides of the present invention, as may be obtained by isolating the 5′ non-coding sequences located upstream of the coding segment or exon, for example, using recombinant cloning or PCR™ technology, or both in connection with the compositions disclosed herein.

In other embodiments, it is contemplated that certain advantages will be gained by positioning the coding nucleic-acid segment under the control of a recombinant, or heterologous, promoter. As used herein, a recombinant or heterologous promoter is intended to refer to a promoter that is not normally associated with a nucleic segment encoding one or more bioluminescence polypeptides in its natural environment. Such promoters may include promoters normally associated with other genes, or promoters isolated from any bacterial, viral, eukaryotic, or plant cell, or both. Naturally, it will be important to employ a promoter that effectively directs the expression of the DNA segment in the cell type, organism, or even animal, chosen for expression. The use of promoter and cell type combinations for protein expression is generally known to those of skill in the art of molecular biology, for example, see Sambrook *et al.*, 1989. The promoters employed may be constitutive, or inducible, and can be used under the appropriate conditions to direct high-level expression of the introduced DNA segment, such as is advantageous in the large-scale production of recombinant proteins or peptides. Preferred promoters are those that are induced in the presence of environmental factors or stress.

The ability of such nucleic-acid probes to specifically hybridize to bioluminescence polypeptide-encoding sequences will enable them to be of use in detecting the presence of complementary sequences in a given sample. However, other uses are envisioned, including the use of the sequence information for the preparation of mutant species primers, or primers for use in preparing other genetic constructions.

Nucleic-acid molecules having sequence regions consisting of contiguous nucleotide stretches of such as 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 52, 53, *etc.*; 60, 61, 62, 63, *etc.*; 70, 71, 72, 73, *etc.*, 80, 81, 82, 83, *etc.*, 90, 91, 92, 93, *etc.*; 100, 101, 102, 103, *etc.*; 150, 151, 152, 153, *etc.*; including all integers through the 200-500; 500-1,000; 1,000-2,000; 2,000-3,000; 3,000-5,000; 5,000-10,000 ranges, up to and including sequences of about 12,001, 12,002, 13,001, 13,002 and the like nucleotides or so, identical or complementary to nucleic-acid sequences disclosed herein are particularly contemplated as hybridization probes for use in, *e.g.*, Southern and Northern blotting. Smaller fragments will generally find use in hybridization embodiments, wherein the length of the contiguous complementary region may be varied, such as between about 10 to 14 and about 100 or 200 nucleotides, but larger contiguous complementary stretches may be used, according to the length complementary sequences one wishes to detect.

The use of a hybridization probe of about 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, or 19 nucleotides in length allows the formation of a duplex molecule that is both stable and selective. In order to increase stability and selectivity of the hybrid molecules having contiguous complementary sequences over stretches greater than 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, or 19 bases in length are generally preferred and thereby improve the quality and degree of specific hybrid molecules obtained; however, one will generally prefer to design nucleic-acid molecules having gene-complementary stretches of 15 to 20 contiguous nucleotides, or even longer, where desired.

Of course, fragments may also be obtained by other techniques such as, *e.g.*, by mechanical shearing or by restriction enzyme digestion. Small nucleic-acid segments or fragments may be readily prepared by, for example, directly synthesizing

the fragment by chemical means, as is commonly practiced using an automated oligonucleotide synthesizer. Also, fragments may be obtained by application of nucleic-acid reproduction technology, such as the PCR™ technology of U.S. Patents 4,683,195 and 4,683,202, each incorporated herein by reference, by introducing selected sequences into recombinant vectors for recombinant production, and by other recombinant DNA techniques generally known to those of skill in the art of molecular biology.

Accordingly, the nucleotide sequences of the invention may be used for their ability to selectively form duplex molecules with complementary stretches of DNA fragments. Depending on the application envisioned, one will desire to employ varying conditions of hybridization to achieve varying degrees of selectivity of probe towards target sequence. For applications requiring high selectivity, one will typically desire to employ relatively stringent conditions to form the hybrids, *e.g.*, one will select relatively low salt, or high temperature conditions, such as provided by about 0.02 M to about 0.15 M NaCl at temperatures of about 50°C to about 70°C, or both. Such selective conditions tolerate little, if any, mismatch between the probe and the template or target strand, and would be particularly suitable for isolating bioluminescence polypeptide-encoding DNA segments. Detection of DNA segments via hybridization is well-known to those of skill in the art, and the teachings of U.S. Patents 4,965,188 and 5,176,995, each incorporated herein by reference, are exemplary of the methods of hybridization analyses. Teachings such as those found in the texts of Maloy *et al.*, 1990; 1994; Segal 1976; Prokop, 1991; and Kuby, 1994, are particularly relevant.

Of course, for some applications, for example, where one desires to prepare mutants employing a mutant primer strand hybridized to an underlying template or where one seeks to isolate bioluminescence polypeptide-encoding sequences from related species, functional equivalents, or the like, less stringent hybridization conditions will typically be needed in order to allow formation of the heteroduplex. In these circumstances, one may desire to employ conditions such as about 0.15 M to about 0.9 M salt, at temperatures ranging from about 20°C to about 55°C. Cross-hybridizing species can thereby be readily identified as positively hybridizing signals

with respect to control hybridizations. In any case, it is generally appreciated that conditions can be rendered more stringent by the addition of increasing amounts of formamide, which serves to destabilize the hybrid duplex in the same manner as increased temperature does. Thus, hybridization conditions can be readily manipulated, and thus will generally be a method of choice depending on the desired results.

In certain embodiments, it will be advantageous to employ nucleic-acid sequences of the present invention in combination with an appropriate means, such as a label, for determining hybridization. A wide variety of appropriate indicator means are known in the art, including fluorescent and enzymatic, which are capable of giving a detectable signal. In preferred embodiments, one will likely desire to employ a fluorescent label or an enzyme tag, such as urease, alkaline phosphatase or peroxidase. In the case of enzyme tags, colorimetric indicator substrates are known that can be employed to provide a means visible to the human eye or spectrophotometrically to identify specific hybridization with complementary nucleic-acid-containing samples. Similarly, in the case of fluorescent tags, fluorescent indicators are known that can be employed to provide a means visible to the apparatus of the present invention.

In general, it is envisioned that the hybridization probes described herein will be useful both as reagents in solution hybridization as well as in embodiments employing a solid phase. In embodiments involving a solid phase, the test DNA (or RNA) is adsorbed or otherwise affixed to a selected matrix or surface. This fixed, single-stranded nucleic-acid is then subjected to specific hybridization with selected probes under desired conditions. The selected conditions will depend on the particular circumstances based on the particular criteria required (depending, for example, on the G+C content, type of target nucleic-acid, source of nucleic-acid, size of hybridization probe, etc.). After washing of the hybridized surface so as to remove nonspecifically bound probe molecules, specific hybridization is detected, or even quantitated, by means of the label. Means for probe labeling and hybrid detection are well-known to those of skill in the art, as evidenced by references such as Sayler and Layton (1990) and Hill *et al.* (1991), each specifically incorporated herein by reference.

4.11 METHODS FOR PREPARING MUTAGENIZED DNA SEGMENTS

In certain circumstances, it may be desirable to modify or alter one or more nucleotides in one or more of the promoter sequences disclosed herein for the purpose of altering or changing the transcriptional activity or other property of the promoter region. In general, the means and methods for mutagenizing a DNA segment are well known to those of skill in the art. Modifications to such segments may be made by random or site-specific mutagenesis procedures. The promoter region may be modified by altering its structure through the addition or deletion of one or more nucleotides from the sequence which encodes the corresponding un-modified promoter region.

Mutagenesis may be performed in accordance with any of the techniques known in the art such as and not limited to synthesizing an oligonucleotide having one or more mutations within the sequence of a particular promoter region. In particular, site-specific mutagenesis is a technique useful in the preparation of promoter mutants, through specific mutagenesis of the underlying DNA. The technique further provides a ready ability to prepare and test sequence variants, for example, incorporating one or more of the foregoing considerations, by introducing one or more nucleotide sequence changes into the DNA. Site-specific mutagenesis allows the production of mutants through the use of specific oligonucleotide sequences which encode the DNA sequence of the desired mutation, as well as a sufficient number of adjacent nucleotides, to provide a primer sequence of sufficient size and sequence complexity to form a stable duplex on both sides of the deletion junction being traversed. Typically, a primer of about 17 to about 75 nucleotides or more in length is preferred, with about 10 to about 25 or more residues on both sides of the junction of the sequence being altered.

In general, the technique of site-specific mutagenesis is well known in the art, as exemplified by various publications. As will be appreciated, the technique typically employs a phage vector which exists in both a single stranded and double stranded form. Typical vectors useful in site-directed mutagenesis include vectors such as the M13 phage. These phage are readily commercially available and their use

is generally well known to those skilled in the art. Double stranded plasmids are also routinely employed in site directed mutagenesis which eliminates the step of transferring the gene of interest from a plasmid to a phage.

In general, site-directed mutagenesis in accordance herewith is performed by first obtaining a single-stranded vector or melting apart of two strands of a double-stranded vector which includes within its sequence a DNA sequence which encodes the desired promoter region or peptide. An oligonucleotide primer bearing the desired mutated sequence is prepared, generally synthetically. This primer is then annealed with the single-stranded vector, and subjected to DNA polymerizing enzymes such as *E. coli* polymerase I Klenow fragment, in order to complete the synthesis of the mutation-bearing strand. Thus, a heteroduplex is formed wherein one strand encodes the original non-mutated sequence and the second strand bears the desired mutation. This heteroduplex vector is then used to transform or transfect appropriate cells, such as *E. coli* cells, and clones are selected which include recombinant vectors bearing the mutated sequence arrangement. A genetic selection scheme was devised by Kunkel *et al.* (1987) to enrich for clones incorporating the mutagenic oligonucleotide. Alternatively, the use of PCR™ with commercially available thermostable enzymes such as *Taq* polymerase may be used to incorporate a mutagenic oligonucleotide primer into an amplified DNA fragment that can then be cloned into an appropriate cloning or expression vector. The PCR™-mediated mutagenesis procedures of Tomic *et al.* (1990) and Upender *et al.* (1995) provide two examples of such protocols. A PCR™ employing a thermostable ligase in addition to a thermostable polymerase may also be used to incorporate a phosphorylated mutagenic oligonucleotide into an amplified DNA fragment that may then be cloned into an appropriate cloning or expression vector. The mutagenesis procedure described by Michael (1994) provides an example of one such protocol.

The preparation of sequence variants of the selected promoter-encoding DNA segments using site-directed mutagenesis is provided as a means of producing potentially useful species and is not meant to be limiting, as there are other ways in which sequence variants of DNA sequences may be obtained. For example,

recombinant vectors encoding the desired promoter sequence may be treated with mutagenic agents, such as hydroxylamine, to obtain sequence variants.

As used herein, the term "oligonucleotide directed mutagenesis procedure" refers to template-dependent processes and vector-mediated propagation which result in an increase in the concentration of a specific nucleic-acid molecule relative to its initial concentration, or in an increase in the concentration of a detectable signal, such as amplification. As used herein, the term "oligonucleotide directed mutagenesis procedure" also is intended to refer to a process that involves the template-dependent extension of a primer molecule. The term template-dependent process refers to nucleic-acid synthesis of an RNA or a DNA molecule wherein the sequence of the newly synthesized strand of nucleic-acid is dictated by the well known rules of complementary base pairing (Watson, 1987). Typically, vector mediated methodologies involve the introduction of the nucleic-acid fragment into a DNA or RNA vector, the clonal amplification of the vector, and the recovery of the amplified nucleic-acid fragment. Examples of such methodologies are provided by U.S. Patent No. 4,237,224, specifically incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

A number of template dependent processes are available to amplify the target sequences of interest present in a sample. One of the best known amplification methods is the polymerase chain reaction (PCR™) which is described in detail in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,683,195, 4,683,202 and 4,800,159, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Briefly, in PCR™, two primer sequences are prepared which are complementary to regions on opposite complementary strands of the target sequence. An excess of deoxynucleoside triphosphates are added to a reaction mixture along with a DNA polymerase (*e.g., Taq* polymerase). If the target sequence is present in a sample, the primers will bind to the target and the polymerase will cause the primers to be extended along the target sequence by adding on nucleotides. By raising and lowering the temperature of the reaction mixture, the extended primers will dissociate from the target to form reaction products and excess primers will bind to the target and to the reaction products. The process is then repeated. Preferably a reverse transcriptase PCR™ amplification procedure may be performed in order to

quantify the amount of mRNA amplified. Polymerase chain reaction methodologies are well known in the art.

Another method for amplification is the ligase chain reaction (referred to as LCR), disclosed in Eur. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. 320,308, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. In LCR, two complementary probe pairs are prepared, and in the presence of the target sequence, each pair will bind to opposite complementary strands of the target such that they abut. In the presence of a ligase, the two probe pairs will link to form a single unit. By temperature cycling, as in PCR™, bound ligated units dissociate from the target and then serve as "target sequences" for ligation of excess probe pairs. U.S. Patent No. 4,883,750, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, describes an alternative method of amplification similar to LCR for binding probe pairs to a target sequence.

Qbeta Replicase, described in Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. PCT/US87/00880, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, may also be used as still another amplification method in the present invention. In this method, a replicative sequence of RNA which has a region complementary to that of a target is added to a sample in the presence of an RNA polymerase. The polymerase will copy the replicative sequence which can then be detected.

An isothermal amplification method, in which restriction endonucleases and ligases are used to achieve the amplification of target molecules that contain nucleotide 5'-[α-thio]triphosphates in one strand of a restriction site (Walker *et al.*, 1992, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety), may also be useful in the amplification of nucleic-acids in the present invention.

Strand Displacement Amplification (SDA) is another method of carrying out isothermal amplification of nucleic-acids which involves multiple rounds of strand displacement and synthesis, *i.e.* nick translation. A similar method, called Repair Chain Reaction (RCR), is another method of amplification which may be useful in the present invention and is involves annealing several probes throughout a region targeted for amplification, followed by a repair reaction in which only two of the four bases are present. The other two bases can be added as biotinylated derivatives for easy detection. A similar approach is used in SDA.

Still other amplification methods described in Great Britain Pat. Appl. No. 2 202 328, and in Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. PCT/US89/01025, each of which is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, may be used in accordance with the present invention. In the former application, "modified" primers are used in a PCR™ like, template and enzyme dependent synthesis. The primers may be modified by labeling with a capture moiety (*e.g.*, biotin) and/or a detector moiety (*e.g.*, enzyme). In the latter application, an excess of labeled probes are added to a sample. In the presence of the target sequence, the probe binds and is cleaved catalytically. After cleavage, the target sequence is released intact to be bound by excess probe. Cleavage of the labeled probe signals the presence of the target sequence.

Other nucleic-acid amplification procedures include transcription-based amplification systems (TAS) (Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. WO 88/10315, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety), including nucleic-acid sequence based amplification (NASBA) and 3SR. In NASBA, the nucleic-acids can be prepared for amplification by standard phenol/chloroform extraction, heat denaturation of a sample, treatment with lysis buffer and minispin columns for isolation of DNA and RNA or guanidinium chloride extraction of RNA. These amplification techniques involve annealing a primer which has crystal protein-specific sequences. Following polymerization, DNA/RNA hybrids are digested with RNase H while double stranded DNA molecules are heat denatured again. In either case the single stranded DNA is made fully double stranded by addition of second crystal protein-specific primer, followed by polymerization. The double stranded DNA molecules are then multiply transcribed by a polymerase such as T7 or SP6. In an isothermal cyclic reaction, the RNAs are reverse transcribed into double stranded DNA, and transcribed once against with a polymerase such as T7 or SP6. The resulting products, whether truncated or complete, indicate crystal protein-specific sequences.

Eur. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. 329,822, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, disclose a nucleic-acid amplification process involving cyclically synthesizing single-stranded RNA ("ssRNA"), single-stranded DNA (ssDNA), and double-stranded DNA (dsDNA), which may be used in accordance with the present invention. The ssRNA is a first template for a first primer oligonucleotide, which is

elongated by reverse transcriptase (RNA-dependent DNA polymerase). The RNA is then removed from resulting DNA:RNA duplex by the action of ribonuclease H (RNase H, an RNase specific for RNA in a duplex with either DNA or RNA). The resultant ssDNA is a second template for a second primer, which also includes the sequences of an RNA polymerase promoter (exemplified by T7 RNA polymerase) 5' to its homology to its template. This primer is then extended by DNA polymerase (exemplified by the large "Klenow" fragment of *E. coli* DNA polymerase I), resulting as a double-stranded DNA ("dsDNA") molecule, having a sequence identical to that of the original RNA between the primers and having additionally, at one end, a promoter sequence. This promoter sequence can be used by the appropriate RNA polymerase to make many RNA copies of the DNA. These copies can then re-enter the cycle leading to very swift amplification. With proper choice of enzymes, this amplification can be done isothermally without addition of enzymes at each cycle. Because of the cyclical nature of this process, the starting sequence can be chosen to be in the form of either DNA or RNA.

PCT Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. WO 89/06700, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, disclose a nucleic-acid sequence amplification scheme based on the hybridization of a promoter/primer sequence to a target ssDNA followed by transcription of many RNA copies of the sequence. This scheme is not cyclic, *i.e.* new templates are not produced from the resultant RNA transcripts. Other amplification methods include "RACE" (Frohman, 1990), and "one-sided PCR™" (Ohara, 1989) which are well-known to those of skill in the art.

Methods based on ligation of two (or more) oligonucleotides in the presence of nucleic-acid having the sequence of the resulting "di-oligonucleotide", thereby amplifying the di-oligonucleotide (Wu and Dean, 1996, incorporated herein by reference in its entirety), may also be used in the amplification of DNA sequences of the present invention.

4.12 BIOLOGICAL FUNCTIONAL EQUIVALENTS

Modification and changes may be made in the structure of the peptides of the present invention and DNA segments which encode them and still obtain a functional

molecule that encodes a protein or peptide with desirable characteristics. The following is a discussion based upon changing the amino acids of a protein to create an equivalent, or even an improved, second-generation molecule. The amino acid changes may be achieved by changing the codons of the DNA sequence, according to the codons listed in Table 3.

TABLE 3

TABLE OF CODONS

Amino Acids			Codons					
Alanine	Ala	A	GCA	GCC	GCG	GCU		
Cysteine	Cys	C	UGC	UGU				
Aspartic acid	Asp	D	GAC	GAU				
Glutamic acid	Glu	E	GAA	GAG				
Phenylalanine	Phe	F	UUC	UUU				
Glycine	Gly	G	GGA	GGC	GGG	GGU		
Histidine	His	H	CAC	CAU				
Isoleucine	Ile	I	AUA	AUC	AUU			
Lysine	Lys	K	AAA	AAG				
Leucine	Leu	L	UUA	UUG	CUA	CUC	CUG	CUU
Methionine	Met	M	AUG					
Asparagine	Asn	N	AAC	AAU				
Proline	Pro	P	CCA	CCC	CCG	CCU		
Glutamine	Gln	Q	CAA	CAG				
Arginine	Arg	R	AGA	AGG	CGA	CGC	CGG	CGU
Serine	Ser	S	AGC	AGU	UCA	UCC	UCG	UCU
Threonine	Thr	T	ACA	ACC	ACG	ACU		
Valine	Val	V	GUA	GUC	GUG	GUU		
Tryptophan	Trp	W	UGG					
Tyrosine	Tyr	Y	UAC	UAU				

For example, certain amino acids may be substituted for other amino acids in a protein structure without appreciable loss of interactive binding capacity with

structures such as antigen-binding regions of antibodies or binding sites on substrate molecules. Since it is the interactive capacity and nature of a protein that defines that protein's biological functional activity, certain amino acid sequence substitutions can be made in a protein sequence; and, of course, its underlying DNA coding sequence, and nevertheless obtain a protein with like properties. It is thus contemplated by the inventors that various changes may be made in the peptide sequences of the disclosed compositions, or corresponding DNA sequences which encode said peptides without appreciable loss of their biological utility or activity.

In making such changes, the hydropathic index of amino acids may be considered. The importance of the hydropathic amino acid index in conferring interactive biologic function on a protein is generally understood in the art (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982, incorporate herein by reference). It is accepted that the relative hydropathic character of the amino acid contributes to the secondary structure of the resultant protein, which in turn defines the interaction of the protein with other molecules, for example, enzymes, substrates, receptors, DNA, antibodies, antigens, and the like.

Each amino acid has been assigned a hydropathic index on the basis of their hydrophobicity and charge characteristics (Kyte and Doolittle, 1982), these are: isoleucine (+4.5); valine (+4.2); leucine (+3.8); phenylalanine (+2.8); cysteine/cystine (+2.5); methionine (+1.9); alanine (+1.8); glycine (-0.4); threonine (–0.7); serine (–0.8); tryptophan (–0.9); tyrosine (–1.3); proline (–1.6); histidine (–3.2); glutamate (–3.5); glutamine (–3.5); aspartate (–3.5); asparagine (–3.5); lysine (–3.9); and arginine (–4.5).

It is known in the art that certain amino acids may be substituted by other amino acids having a similar hydropathic index or score and still result in a protein with similar biological activity, *i.e.* still obtain a biological functionally equivalent protein. In making such changes, the substitution of amino acids whose hydropathic indices are within ±2 is preferred, those which are within ±1 are particularly preferred, and those within ±0.5 are even more particularly preferred.

It is also understood in the art that the substitution of like amino acids can be made effectively on the basis of hydrophilicity. U. S. Patent 4,554,101, incorporated

herein by reference, states that the greatest local average hydrophilicity of a protein, as governed by the hydrophilicity of its adjacent amino acids, correlates with a biological property of the protein.

As detailed in U. S. Patent 4,554,101, the following hydrophilicity values have been assigned to amino acid residues: arginine (+3.0); lysine (+3.0); aspartate (+3.0 ± 1); glutamate (+3.0 ± 1); serine (+0.3); asparagine (+0.2); glutamine (+0.2); glycine (0); threonine (−0.4); proline (−0.5 ± 1); alanine (−0.5); histidine (−0.5); cysteine (−1.0); methionine (−1.3); valine (−1.5); leucine (−1.8); isoleucine (−1.8); tyrosine (−2.3); phenylalanine (−2.5); tryptophan (−3.4).

It is understood that an amino acid can be substituted for another having a similar hydrophilicity value and still obtain a biologically equivalent, and in particular, an immunologically equivalent protein. In such changes, the substitution of amino acids whose hydrophilicity values are within ±2 is preferred, those which are within ±1 are particularly preferred, and those within ±0.5 are even more particularly preferred.

As outlined above, amino acid substitutions are generally therefore based on the relative similarity of the amino acid side-chain substituents, for example, their hydrophobicity, hydrophilicity, charge, size, and the like. Exemplary substitutions which take various of the foregoing characteristics into consideration are well known to those of skill in the art and include: arginine and lysine; glutamate and aspartate; serine and threonine; glutamine and asparagine; and valine, leucine and isoleucine.

4.13 ADDITIONAL ASPECTS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

In addition to the embodiments described in detail herein, the inventors further contemplate that the BBIC of the present invention may be used to detect pollutants, explosives, heavy-metals, or other chemical or biological agents residing in areas like groundwater, streams, rivers, oceans, or other environments. Furthermore, the BBIC of the present invention may be used in combinatorial chemistry in biomedical-drug and anti-cancer screening, sensors for oil exploration, industrial process control, and biomedical instrumentation. The BBIC of the present invention may be used to respond to the absence or low abundance of test chemicals, *e.g.*, Fe^{+2} or PO_4^{-2}. In

addition to compounds, the BBIC of the present invention may be used to detect environmental conditions, such as temperature, radiation, and pressure. The inventors contemplate that essentially any signal transduction pathway may be utilized provided the organism of the BBIC is capable of detecting the presence or absence of a substance or condition and alter the expression of a promoter operatively linked to a reporter gene.

Besides those described in detail herein, the inventors contemplate additional methods of powering the BBICs of the present invention. They may be powered remotely by induction of RF, optical energy (including solar), mechanical energy (vibration, water flow, air flow, etc.), chemical energy, or thermal energy. In some embodiments of the present invention, the light generated by the sensing organism or compound may be used to power the BBIC.

The inventors contemplate that the BBICs of the present invention may be readout by wireless means (*e.g.*, RF or on-chip light-emitting device) or alternatively, wired means (*e.g.*, direct analog, digital, or passive means including resistance, capacitance, and inductance, *etc.*). The BBICs of the present invention may also be realized in bipolar silicon, silicon-germanium, GaAs, InP or other semiconductor IC processes.

The light-emitting agent of the present invention may be biological or chemical, wherein the light producing mechanism may be luminescence, fluorescence, or phosphorescence. The inventors further contemplate that the light emitting agent may be placed on the IC at the time of manufacture or selected and placed on the IC at the time of use. In other embodiments of the present invention, the inventors contemplate BBICs comprising arrays of light-emitting agents further comprising a matching array of light-detection devices. With the addition of signal processing (analog, digital, neural network, *etc.*), this array device may be used to detect a family of chemicals instead of an individual chemical. Additionally, the BBICs comprising arrays of light-emitting elements with different emission wavelengths further comprise an integrated photo-spectrometer. For example, by measuring the spectra of the emitted light, this embodiment may be used to detect a number of chemicals simultaneously or sequentially, instead of detecting a single chemical.

A number of methods of packaging the BBICs of the present invention may be envisioned. Generally, the type of packaging chosen may reflect the predicted environment to which the BBIC would be subjected. Such environments may include, but are not limited to, aqueous, gaseous, or solid environments. For example, the inventors contemplate a BBIC encased in concrete near a rebar to detect corrosion. In another embodiment, the inventors contemplate packaging the BBIC in a manner that may allow *in vivo* measurements for biomedical application (*e.g.*, detecting disease, sensing a patient's condition, *etc.)*. Generally, the BBIC would be packaged in a semi-permeable membrane that would permit the particular fluid being examined (*e.g.*, blood) to pass, while substances which would harm or interfere with the BBIC (*e.g.*, a animal host defense mechanism) would be blocked.

In certain embodiments, the light-emitting agent of the present invention may comprise a multicellular organism (*e.g.*, an insect). It is well-known that larger organisms such as insects can be genetically engineered to bioluminesce in the presence of targeted substances. In such cases, the IC portion of the BBIC may be attached to an insect in such a way that the chip would detect the resulting bioluminesce. Such a system would be mobile, since the insect itself is mobile and unaffected by the presence of the attached BBIC. One such example of this application of the apparatus disclosed herein is illustrated in FIG. 33. The inventors further contemplate that when the light-emitting agent is a multicellular organism, the BBIC may be self-propelling and/or self-powering.

The inventors contemplate a BBIC comprising global position sensing that may allow the BBIC to sense location as well as the presence or absence of a certain compound or biological agent.

The inventors contemplate an array of BBICs connected in a wired or wireless distributed network to form an artificially intelligent sensing network. This array of BBICs may comprise on-chip processing capability on each BBIC.

BBICs could be distributed over a wide area, yet wirelessly connected together as shown in FIG. 34. If each BBIC had on-chip signal processing capabilities (*e.g.*, neural network processing), this distributed network would form an artificially intelligent sensor system. For example, consider a large network of BBICs deployed

over a large area where a toxic gas leak has occurred. As the gas cloud enters the area of the BBIC network useful information such as gas composition, speed, and direction of the cloud could be determined by the sensor network. If other information such as wind conditions, terrain topology, temperature, etc., were available to the network, the network could make predictions of risks to human populations.

5.0 EXAMPLES

The following examples are included to demonstrate preferred embodiments of the invention. It should be appreciated by those of skill in the art that the techniques disclosed in the examples which follow represent techniques discovered by the inventors to function well in the practice of the invention, and thus can be considered to constitute preferred modes for its practice. However, those of skill in the art should, in light of the present disclosure, appreciate that many changes can be made in the specific embodiments which are disclosed and still obtain a like or similar result without departing from the spirit and scope of the invention.

5.1 EXAMPLE 1 -- A MODIFIED MINI-TN5 SYSTEM FOR CHROMOSOMALLY-INTRODUCED *LUX* REPORTERS

This example describes a cloning plasmid which allows inserts to be directionally cloned into a mini-Tn*5* transposon vector. Such vectors are useful for preparing the bioreporter constructs useful in the methods of the present invention. As an exemplary embodiment, a *tod-lux* fusion was constructed and introduced into *Pseudomonas putida* F1 to examine the induction of the *tod* operon when exposed to BTEX compounds and aqueous solutions of JP-4 jet fuel constituents. Since this system contains the complete *lux* cassette (*lux*CDABE), bacterial bioluminescence can be measured in whole cells without the need to add an aldehyde substrate. The resultant strain was also evaluated for its stability and fitness compared to the wild type strain F 1.

5.1.1 MATERIALS AND METHODS

5.1.1.1 ORGANISMS AND CULTURE CONDITIONS

Strains used in these studies are shown in Table 4. All cultures were grown at 28°C except for *E. coli* strains, which were grown at 37°C.

5.1.1.2 DNA ISOLATION AND MANIPULATION

Large scale plasmid DNA isolation was accomplished using a modified alkaline lysis protocol (Promega, 1992). Chromosomal DNA was prepared using the protocol outlined by Ausubel *et al.* (1989). All DNA preparations were further purified by CsCl EtBr ultracentrifugation (Sambrook *et al.*, 1989). DNA modifications and restriction endonuclease digestions were performed as outlined in Sambrook *et al.* (1989).

5.1.1.3 CLONING AND TRANSPOSON CONSTRUCTION

The transposon mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* was constructed using site-directed mutagenesis and the polymerase chain reaction. Two 58 base oligonucleotides, 5′ and 3′ with respect to the kanamycin resistance gene (Km^R) in pCRII™ (Invitrogen, San Diego, CA) were synthesized using a Beckman Oligo 1000 DNA synthesizer (Palo Alto, CA) following the manufacturer's protocol. Base substitutions were made to generate both I and O insertion sequences as well as unique *Not*I and *Xba*I sites inside the transposon for cloning. An *Eco*RI site and a *Nhe*I site were added to the end of each oligonucleotide, respectively, to allow cloning of mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* into the delivery vector pUT (Herrero *et al.*, 1990). The sequence and base changes can be seen in FIG. 10. The primers were used to amplify the kanamycin resistance gene from pCRII™ using Touchdown PCR™ (Don *et al.*, 1991) using the manufacturer's protocol with the following thermocycler conditions: 94°C initial denaturation, 5 min; 5 cycles at 94°C for 1 min, 72°C annealing for 1 min, 72°C extension for 2 min; the annealing temperature was lowered 5°C every 5 cycles until 42°C at which 8 cycles were run, followed by a final extension of 15 min at 72°C. The 1.3 kb product was cloned into pCRII™ using a TA cloning kit (Invitrogen, San Diego, CA) according to the manufacturer's protocol. The resultant plasmid pUTK210 containing the mini-

Tn*5*Km*NX* was sequenced to verify the incorporation of both the I and O insertion sequences. After confirmation, pUTK210 was cleaved with *Nhe*I and *Eco*RI and gel-purified using agarose gel electrophoresis (Sambrook *et al.*, 1989). The purified mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* fragment was cloned into the *Xba*I-*Eco*RI site of the mini-Tn*5* delivery vector, pUT and electroporated into *E. coli* S 17-1 *(λpir)*. Electroporants with the proper inserts were selected on LB plates with 50 μg/ml kanamycin. DNA minipreps (Holmes *et al.*, 1981) were obtained and inserts were verified by cleavage with restriction endonucleases.

The cloning vector, pLJS was constructed from pBluescript II (KS) (Stratagene, LaJolla CA) by cleaving with *Bss*H II and religating to remove the multicloning site (MCS). Ligated DNA was transformed into DH5α and spread on LB plates supplemented with ampicillin (50 μg/ml) and X-gal (40 μg/ml). Transformants without the MCS were white since they were incapable of α-complementation. The resultant plasmid was named pBSMCS(-). Two oligonucleotides (a 47-mer and a 44-mer) with base substitutions were synthesized as previously described to regenerate the multicloning site and add the following restriction sites, *Xba*I ,*Nhe*I, *Spe*I, and *Avr*II. The sequences and orientation of the added sites can be seen in FIG. 10. The new multicloning site was amplified from pBluescript II (KS) using the manufacturer's protocol with the following thermocycler conditions: 94°C initial denaturation 5 min; 38 cycles of denaturation at 94°C for 30 sec, annealing at 42°C for 1 min, extension at 72°C for 30 s; and, final extension at 72°C for 15 min. The amplified fragment was cleaved with *Bss*HII, ligated into pBSMCS(-) and transformed into DH5α™. Transformants were screened on LB agar with ampicillin (50 μg/l) and X-gal (40 μg/ml). Blue colonies were selected since they indicated restored α-complementation. The construct was sequenced to confirm the base substitutions and integrity of the MCS. pLJST2 was generated by directionally-cloning the 0.77 kb *Hin*dIII-*Hinc*II fragment containing the 5S ribosomal *rrnB* T_1T_2 transcription terminator from pKK223-3 (Pharmacia, Piscataway, N J) into pLJS cleaved with *Hin*dIII and *Sma*I. The *Not*I-*Avr*II terminator fragment from pLJST2 was subsequently cloned into the *Not*I-*Xba*I site of mini-Tn*5*Km*NX*. This allowed for the subsequent destruction of the *Xba*I site by heterologous ligation and

the regeneration of the *Not*I and *Xba*I unique sites in mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* downstream of the terminator (pUTK211). Mini-Tn*5*Km*tod-lux* (pUTK214) was generated by directionally cloning the 10.2 kb *Not*I-*Xba*I *tod-lux* fragment from pUC 18 Not *tod-lux* (Table 4) into the *Not*I-*Xba*I site of pUTK211. Both insert and vector DNA were purified by agarose gel electrophoresis and electroelution before cloning. All other plasmids and relevant constructs are described in Table 4.

TABLE 4

PLASMIDS

Plasmid	Relevant Genotype/Characteristics	Reference
pDTG514	pGem3Z with a 2.75 kb *Eco*RI-*Sma*I fragment from pDTG350 containing the *tod* promoter, P_{tod}, Ap^R	Menn, 1991
pUCD615	Promoterless *lux*CDABE cassette, *ori* pSa, *ori* pBR322, Ap^R, Km^R	Rogowsky, 1987
pKK223-3	Expression vector containing the 5S ribosomal terminator *rrn*B T_1T_2	Pharmacia
pBSKS	pBluescript $IIKS^+$ with multicloning site (MCS) *Kpn*I- *Sac*I, Ap^R	Stratagene
pBSMCS(-)	pBluescript without the MCS (*Bss*H II-*Bss*H II fragment removed), Ap^R	
pLJS	pBSMCS(-) with added *Xba*I, *Nhe*I, *Avr*II and *Spe*I sites, Ap^R	

TABLE 4 - CONTINUED

Plasmid	Relevant Genotype/Characteristics	Reference
pLJS-tod	pLJS containing the 1.8 kb *Sma*I-*Xho* I *tod* promoter fragment from pDTG514, Ap^R	
pLJS-*lux*	pLJS containing the 8.35 kb *Kpn*I-*Pst*I *lux*CDABE cassette from pUCD615, Ap^R	
pLJST2	pLJS containing the 0.77 kb *Hind*III-*Hinc* II fragment from pKK223-3 cloned into *Hind*III-*Sma*I site, Ap^R	
pUC18 *Not*	Cloning vector containing multicloning site flanked by *Not*I sites, Ap^R	Herrero, 1990
pUC18 *Not-lux*	Contains the 8.35 kb *Xba*I-*Pst* I fragment from pLJS-*lux*, Ap^R	
pUCI8 *Not-todlux*	Contains the 1.8 kb *Spe*I-*Xho*I fragment from pLJS- *tod*, Ap^R	
pUT	5.2 kb cloning vector containing *mob* RP4, *ori* R6K and Tn*5* *tnp* lacking *Not*I sites, Ap^R	Herrero, 1990
pCR™II	3.9 kb cloning vector for PCR™ products with 3′ A overhangs, Ap^R, Km^R	Invitrogen
pUTK209	pCR™II containing mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* with unique *Not*I and *Xba*I sites, Ap^R, Km^R	
pUTK210	pUT containing mini-Tn*5*Km*NX*, Ap^R, Km^R	
pUTK211	pUT/mini-Tn*5*KmT2 containing the 0.8 kb *Not*I-*Avr*II *rrn*B T_1T_2 fragment, Ap^R, Km^R	
pUTK214	pUT/mini-Tn*5*Km*tod-lux* containing the 10.2 kb *Not*I- *Xba*I fragment from pUC18 *Not-todlux*, Ap^R, Km^R	

5.1.1.4 ELECTROPORATION

Electrocompetent cells were prepared as outlined by the manufacturer (BTX, San Diego, CA). Electroporations were performed using a BTX Electroporator 600

with the following conditions: 40 µl cells, 1 µl ligation mixture, a 2.5 kV pulse for about 4.7 ms using a 2 mm gap cuvette. After the pulse, cells were immediately resuspended in LB (to 1 ml) and allowed to recover for 1 h at 37°C (200 rpm) before plating on LB plates with the appropriate antibiotic selection.

5.1.1.5 DNA SEQUENCING

The mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* in pCRII™ was sequenced to confirm that the site-directed mutagenesis was successful using both the forward and reverse sequencing primers for pCRII™. Sequencing was performed using an Applied Biosystems Model 373A (Foster City, CA).

5.1.1.6 TRANSPOSON MUTAGENESIS

E. coli S 17-1(λ*pir)* containing pUTK214 was mated into *P. putida* F1 by plate mating. Donor and recipient cells were mixed in a ratio of approximately 5 to 1, spotted onto LB plates and incubated at 25°C for 24 h. Mutants were selected on *Pseudomonas* isolation agar supplemented with 50 µg/ml kanamycin. Colonies were subsequently sub-cultured to grid plates and exposed to toluene vapor. Colonies which produced light were grown in mineral salts media (MSM) (Stanier *et al.*, 1966) with toluene vapor to ascertain whether or not the transposon had inserted into a required gene for the cell. The strains were also evaluated for their performance as bioreporters in liquid growing cell assays (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992).

5.1.1.7 CONFIRMATION OF TRANSPOSITION

The selected strain was subjected to DNA:DNA hybridization to verify transposition as opposed to recombination by using a ^{32}P-labeled probe specific for the Tn*5* transposase (*tnp*) contained on pUT. Equal target amounts of *lux*A, *tod*C and *tnp* DNA were loaded onto a Biotrans™ nylon membrane (ICN, Irvine, CA) using a Bioslot blot apparatus (Biorad, Hercules, CA) according to the manufacturer's protocol. The blot consisted of chromosomal DNA from F1, TVA8 and the aforementioned controls. The DNA was loaded in triplicate and the blot was subdivided and each separate blot was hybridized with either *lux*A, *todC*, or *tnp*

PCR™-generated ^{32}P-labeled DNA probes. Blots were hybridized and washed as previously described (Applegate *et al.*, 1997).

5.1.1.8 Stability Assays

Batch stability assays were performed by transferring 1 ml of a 100 ml overnight culture grown on LB with 50 μg/ml kanamycin (Km_{50}) to a 250 ml Erlemeyer flask using toluene as a sole carbon source as described for the growth curves. One ml of culture was transferred every day for five days to flasks with 100 ml MSM supplied with toluene vapor (without Km). Assays were performed in triplicate. Before each transfer, cells were plated on selective ($LBKm_{50}$) and non-selective media (LB) to ascertain loss of kanamycin-resistance resulting from deletion or excision of the transposon. Colonies were subjected to colony hybridization using a 295 bp *luxA* DNA probe (Johnston, 1996).

Stability was also assayed in continuous culture using a New Brunswick Bio Flow fermentor (Edison, NJ) with a 370 ml vessel operated at 28°C at 180 rpm. The feed consisted of MSM supplemented with toluene at approximately 100 mg/L at a flow rate of 1.0 ml/min. This was accomplished by simultaneously adding toluene saturated-MSM at a flow rate of 0.2 ml a min and MSM at a flow rate of 0.8 ml a min using FMI metering pumps (Oyster Bay, NY). The chemostat was maintained at 28°C using a cold finger and a refrigerated circulating water bath (Brinkman, Westbury, NY). The chemostat was operated for 14 days which corresponded to about 100 generations. Monitoring for both bioluminescence and optical density was performed daily. Cells from the chemostat were also plated every 7 days and colony hybridizations were performed as described previously.

5.1.1.9 Growth Curves

Growth curves of TVA8 and F1 were obtained by growing cells in 100 ml MSM with toluene vapor supplied as a sole carbon source in 250 ml Erlemeyer flasks. Cultures were started from a fresh overnight culture, grown to an ODS_{546} of 1.0 in 100 ml of LB and washed twice in 100 ml MSM and resuspended in 100 ml of media. A one ml aliquot of this suspension was added to the toluene flasks. The cultures were

shaken at 200 rpm at 28°C and sampled approximately every hour. The OD_{546} was measured for each culture and rates of increase in optical density were determined from the linear portion of the curves.

5.1.1.10 BIOLUMINESCENCE SENSING

Bioluminescent assays were conducted as described by Heitzer *et al.* (1992). An overnight culture from a frozen stock of TVA8 was prepared in a 250 mL Erleumeyer flask containing 100 mL LB with 50 μg/ml kanamycin. A sub-culture was prepared in yeast extract-peptone-glucose media (YEPG), grown to an OD_{546} of 0.35-0.45 and assayed every 30 min. In preliminary studies, an incubation time of 2 hours was shown to provide a consistent light response which maximized the signal intensity. After 2 hours, the final OD_{546} was measured and values are expressed as specific bioluminescence (namp/OD_{546}).

5.1.1.11 TEST SAMPLE PREPARATION

An aqueous solution of JP-4 jet fuel constituents was prepared by adding JP-4 to sterile deionized water in a 1 to 10 jet fuel to water ratio. The solution were shaken on a rotary shaker for 24 hours. After phase separation, aqueous phase aliquots were added to test vials. Test solutions of toluene, benzene, ethylbenzene, phenol and isomers of xylene were prepared as above.

5.1.1.12 BIOLUMINESCENCE MEASUREMENTS

Sample vials were placed in a light-tight box and the light output was measured using a liquid light pipe and an Oriel photomultiplier and digital display (Model 77340 and Model 7070, Stratford, CT) as previously described (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992), except that 25 mL scintillation vials were used. Bioluminescent readings were taken every 30 minutes. Light measurements for growth curves and the chemostat were measured as above with the exception that the light-tight box was modified to hold a cuvette allowing for light measurement after OD readings.

5.1.2 RESULTS

5.1.2.1 STRAIN CONSTRUCTION

Sequence analysis of the resultant mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* showed that both the I and O insertion sequences were identical to the primers that were used to generate the transposon (*see* FIG. 10). The extra adenine that was mistakenly added did not affect the construct. The plasmid pLJS (FIG. 12) was also sequenced to confirm that the added sites were incorporated and to determine the integrity of the multicloning site (MCS). Sequence data showed that the MCS and all of the added sites were intact. The resultant cloning vector also maintained the ability for α-complementation. A schematic representation of the mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* construction and the final construct mini-Tn*5*Km*tod-lux* can be seen in FIG. 11.

The S 17-1 (λ*pir*) strain of *E. coli* harboring mini-*5*Km*tod-lux* was mated with F1 and resultant mutants were screened for their ability to produce bioluminescence when exposed to toluene. Fourteen strains were evaluated for their ability to grow on toluene MSM and number 8 was chosen and designated TVA8. The strain was examined to confirm that it was a result of a transposition event and not a recombination event. DNA:DNA hybridization showed that TVA8 contained the *lux* genes but did not show hybridization with *tnp*. Blots hybridized with *tnp* were re-probed with *todC* to verify that DNA was present. The negative transposase result confirmed that transposition had occurred.

5.1.2.2 STABILITY OF TVA8

In stability studies with batch and continuous cultures, the transposon insertion in F1 appeared to be stable. Plate counts from selective ($LBKm_{50}$) and non-selective media (LB) were compared to determine whether the kanamycin marker was being lost, and colony blots were subsequently hybridized with *lux*A probe to confirm that all colonies contained the *lux* transposon insert (and were not contaminants). For the succinate chemostat without antibiotic selection, the selective plate counts were approximately five percent lower than the non-selective plate counts after 10 days, however, 100% of colonies from both plate types were *lux*-positive. In batch stability studies with toluene vapor supplied as sole carbon source, TVA8 did not demonstrate

instability when subjected to the same evaluation. The selective:non-selective plate count ratio was 1.12 ± 0. 13 after 5 daily transfers, and all colonies hybridized with the *lux*A probe. Similar results were observed for TVA8 stability under continuous culture conditions with toluene supplied at approximately 100 mg/L. After a 14 day period (approximately 100 generations), the selective:non-selective plate count ratio was 1.05 ± 0. 13 and all colonies from selective and non-selective plates were *lux*-positive.

5.1.2.2 QUANTITATIVE RESPONSE OF *TOD-LUX* REPORTER STRAIN TO TOLUENE, BTEX COMPOUNDS AND JP-4 JET FUEL

An increase in bioluminescence response for increasing toluene concentrations was observed (*see* FIG. 13). The bioluminescence response to toluene concentration over the range, 5 to 20 mg/L was linear with specific bioluminescence values of 133 to 228 namp/OD_{546}. The fold increase in light response for concentrations above 20 mg/L was less, showing 290 namp/OD_{546} for 50 mg/L. The overall bioluminescence response curve showed a Michaelis-Menten (enzyme kinetics) shape, showing saturation at higher inducer concentrations. The toluene detection limit was determined to be less than 50 μg/l.

TVA8 was examined for its bioluminescence response to BTEX compounds as well as phenol and water-soluble JP-4 jet fuel components. There was a significant light response to benzene, *m*- and *p*-xylenes, phenol and JP-4 (Table 5) as well as to toluene. The same concentrations of toluene and benzene (50 mg/l) resulted in a similar light response. There was no increase of bioluminescence upon exposure to *o*-xylene. The light response due to JP-4 was significantly greater than the additive responses for JP-4 components (*i.e.* BTEX compounds) present at their estimated concentrations (Smith *et al.*, 1981). The increased response may be the result of induction due to other components of JP-4 which were not tested. A significant light response was observed for ethylbenzene after 4 hours. After 2 hours incubation, the cell densities for the ethylbenzene treatments were significantly less than the other samples, indicating that there may have been a toxicity effect. Other studies showed that 50 mg/L ethylbenzene would induce the bioluminescence response without a lag

period when cells were previously grown on ethylbenzene and then subjected to growing cell assays.

TABLE 5

EFFECT OF BTEX, PHENOL AND JP-4 CONSTITUENTS ON THE BIOLUMINESCENCE RESPONSE OF TVA8

Treatment[a]	Exposure Time (hours)	Specific Bioluminescence (namp/OD)[b]
Buffer (Control)	2	0.2 ± 0.1
Toluene	2	291 ± 6
Benzene	2	242 ± 9

TABLE 5 - CONTINUED

Treatment[a]	Exposure Time (hours)	Specific Bioluminescence (namp/OD)[b]
Ethylbenzene	2	1.0 ± 0.2
	4	47 ± 6[c]
o-xylene	2	0.5 ± 0. 1
m-xylene	2	38 ± 3
p-xylene	2	24 ± 2
Phenol	2	70 ± 2
JP-4	2	93 ± 4

[a] Final concentration for BTEX and phenol treatments was approximately 50 mg/L, added as a hydrocarbon-saturated MSM solution. The final percentage of water-soluble JP-4 constituents was approximately 2%.

[b] Values are averages ± standard deviation of three replicate samples. Values were normalized to the final cell density (OD_{546}).

[c] Value for the 4 hour reading was that measured from a similar but separate study.

5.1.2.2 TOLUENE GROWTH COMPARISON OF BIOLUMINESCENT REPORTER WITH F1

Growth curves for TVA8 and the parent strain, F1 on toluene vapor are shown in FIG. 14. The curves show similar shapes with different lag times for TVA8 and F1 which can be attributed to slightly different inoculum concentrations. Rates were computed from the slopes of the linear portion of the growth curve for both strains. The average rate of increase in optical density for F1 and TVA8, 2.14 ± 0.3 and 2.2 ± 0.3 $min^{-1} \times 10^{-3}$, respectively, were not statistically different (α=0.05). These results demonstrate that the bioluminescence reactions do not appear to affect cell growth.

Bioluminescence of TVA8 was measured during growth on toluene and is shown along with the cell density data in FIG. 15. The bioluminescence plots show a similar trend to the TVA8 growth curve, although, they are shifted to earlier time

points. The graph shows that there is a definite correlation between an increase in biomass and an increase in light production. At higher cell densities, cells likely became limited for oxygen resulting in decreased bioluminescence values.

5.1.3 ADVANTAGES OF THE CHROMOSOMALLY INSERTED *TOD-LUX* SYSTEM

The majority of bioluminescent reporters currently being used are the result of cloning a promoter in front of the promoterless *lux*CDABE gene cassette in pUCD615 and transferring the plasmid construct into the strain which contained the particular promoter. Plasmid-based systems have obvious drawbacks such as the need for constant selective pressure to ensure plasmid maintenance as observed by Rice *et al.* (1995). Another important consideration is that of plasmid copy number. If the system is positively regulated, copy number can negatively effect gene expression. Multiple copies of the promoter binding region for the regulatory protein on the plasmid compete with the binding site on the chromosome causing less expression of the operon being studied (Lau *et al.*, 1994). This negative effect is important when using *lux* fusions for on-line monitoring of bacterial processes.

Another strategy used in the construction of bioluminescent reporters is the use of the *lux* transposon Tn*4431* (Shaw *et al.*, 1988). The desired reporter strain is transposon-mutagenized and constructs are selected for bioluminescence upon addition of the specific inducer as in the case of the *nah-lux* reporter HK44 (King *et al.*, 1990). However, a problem with creating a *lux* fusion by transposon insertion is that the pathway in which insertion occurs is usually disrupted. For example, in HK44 the *lux* insertion disrupted *nahG* (salicylate hydrogenase) and therefore the strain was no longer able to mediate the complete degradation of naphthalene *via* the *nah* and *sal* pathways (King *et al.*, 1990; Menu *et al.*, 1993). To develop a strain for use in monitoring naphthalene degradation, the reporter plasmid had to be conjugated with another strain able to complete the metabolism of naphthalene. Due to these concerns, researchers have shifted to using transposon delivery systems.

Herrero *et al.* (1990) constructed a mini-Tn*5* delivery system which consisted of a mini-Tn*5* transposon with unique *Not*I and *Sfi*I restriction sites and a pUC derivative containing either of these two restriction sites flanking the multicloning

site. The transposase was provided in *trans* to provide stability in the final construct. The approach involved sub-cloning the relevant insert into the particular pUC derivative, cloning it into the mini-Tn*5* vector and transposing it into the chromosome of the strain of interest. One drawback to this system is that it is limited to *Not*I and *Sfi*I sites and if either of these two enzymes cut within the insert DNA, alternative strategies have to be pursued. Furthermore, it may be difficult to non-directionally clone a large DNA fragment such as greater than 12 kbp.

The system described herein is a modification of that described previously. The mini-Tn*5* system constructed in this study is based on the use of five enzymes, *Avr*II, *Nhe*I, *Spe*I *Xba*I and *Not*I, as opposed to two. Mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* contains unique *Not*I and *Xba*I sites which allow directional cloning of inserts, negating dephosphorylation of the vector DNA. The final version of the mini-Tn*5* derivative, pUTK211 also contains a strong transcription terminator 5′ to the unique cloning sites to insure that there is no read-through transcription from a gene in which the transposon has been inserted. The cloning vector pLJS used in conjunction with mini-Tn*5*Km*NX* allows the utilization of a large region of the multicloning site flanked by *Avr*II, *Nhe*I, *Spe*I, *Xba*I and *Not*I on one side and *Avr*II, *Nhe*I, *Spe*I and *Xba*I on the other. If there is a *Not*I site in the fragment to be cloned, the *Xba*I site can be used for non-directional cloning. The restriction recognition sequences for these enzymes are rare (6-base sequences with the exception of *Not*I which recognizes an 8-base sequence). The advantage of the *Xba*I site is that it allows the heterologous cloning of *Avr*II, *Nhe*I and *Spe*I since all of these enzymes have the same 5′ overhang, CTAG. This system also allows the assembly of larger inserts as seen by the cloning of the transcription terminator destroying the *Xba*I site by heterologous cloning using *Avr*II. The resultant cloning step also regenerated the unique *Xba*I site. One can use this heterologous cloning strategy of destroying and regeneration of the unique *Xba*I site to assemble different DNA fragments for the desired construct. Using this system, *P. putida* TVA8, a chromosomally-encoded *tod-lux* bioluminescent reporter was constructed.

TVA8 was capable of growing on mineral salts media with toluene or succinate demonstrating that the transposon insertion did not disrupt a gene necessary

for growth. This is a crucial check that must be performed to ascertain the overall fitness of the strain before further evaluation. Furthermore, TVA8 did not show loss of the transposon insertion or loss of bioluminescence after 100 generations in continuous culture or 5 successive transfers in batch culture. These results suggest that selective pressure is not necessary for the integrity of the strain. This stability is important since it eliminates the need for antibiotic selection, which if required would exclude the use of this bioreporter *in situ*. The strain also was compared to the wild type strain F1 to ascertain whether or not the bioluminescent reporter was a significant metabolic drain on the cell, as well as if the site of transposition was a hindrance to the cell. Growth of TVA8 and F1 on toluene vapor showed that there was no difference in growth between the two strains, suggesting that neither the insertion nor the reporter was a significant handicap to the cell.

The *tod-lux* reporter is quite sensitive with a detection limit below 50 μg toluene/L. The bioluminescence value at this concentration was 80-fold greater than the background bioluminescence level. This bioreporter showed a very low background level of bioluminescence (less than 1 namp/OD_{546}). TVA8 was shown to be useful for quantifying toluene present at low concentrations in aqueous solutions. Significant light levels were observed for very low optical densities (FIG. 15).

TVA8 may be described as a generalized BTEX bioreporter rather than simply a toluene bioreporter since it was responsive to benzene, ethylbenzene and *m*- and *p*-xylene as well. Since all of these compounds induce the bioluminescence response, TVA8 may be used as a bioreporter for JP-4 jet fuel contamination or presence of any fuel which contains BTEX compounds. The strain may be used for on-line monitoring of TCE cometabolism since the *lux* and *tod* operons are under the same regulation, and the toluene dioxygenase also catabolizes TCE. Bioluminescent reporters may have great potential for field use applications since they can provide on-line and non-destructive analyses of gene expression as well as detection of chemical contaminants. The development of stable transposon insertion of reporter genes into environmental isolates expands the utility of bioreporter strains for *in situ* sensing of gene expression.

5.2 EXAMPLE 2 -- *P. PUTIDA* B2: A *TOD-LUX* BIOLUMINESCENT REPORTER FOR TOLUENE AND TRICHLOROETHYLENE CO-METABOLISM

The environmental fate and bioremediation potential of trichloroethylene (TCE) have received considerable attention due to its extensive production, use (Storck, 1987) and occurrence as a groundwater priority pollutant of toxic and carcinogenic concern (Geiger and Molner-Kubica, 1977; Petura, 1981; Shahin and Von Borstel, 1977; Van Duren and Banerfee, 1976; Westrick *et al.*, 1984). Bacterial metabolism of TCE has been extensively reviewed (Ensley, 1991). TCE degradation is co-metabolic in that TCE is not used as a carbon source but is fortuitously degraded. Due to the potential production of carcinogenic vinyl chloride during anaerobic degradation (Maltoni and Lefemine, 1974), much of the recent focus on TCE biodegradation has been on aerobic, oxygenase-mediated TCE co-metabolism (Nelson *et al.*, 1988; Oldenhuis *et al.*, 1989). Substantial information has been developed on monooxygenase-mediated co-metabolism of TCE (Oldenhuis *et al.*, 1989; Wackett *et al.*, 1989) with particular emphasis on the methane monooxygenases and a variety of toluene monooxygenases.

Toluene degradation occurs *via* catabolic pathways containing both monooxygenases and dioxygenases, which have the ability to oxidize TCE (Ensley, 1991; Shields and Reagin, 1992; Wackett and Gibson, 1988). The toluene dioxygenase (*todC1C2BA*) contained in *Pseudomonas putida* F1 is also capable of transforming TCE (Zylstra *et al.*, 1989).

Central to the use and further development of aerobic co-metabolic TCE bioremediation is the ability to monitor, control and optimize such biodegradative processes. One such strategy has been the development of bioluminescent *lux* gene fusions for use in on-line reporter technology (Burlage *et al.*, 1990; King *et al.*, 1990). The use of *lux*-reporter systems in the study of the on-line monitoring of naphthalene degradation has been well documented (Heitzer *et al.*, 1995; King *et al.*, 1990). These reporter systems have also been used to assess the bioavailability of pollutants to catabolic organisms (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992; King *et al.*, 1990.

This example describes the construction of *lux* bioreporters for monitoring and optimizing the co-metabolic oxidation of pollutants such as TCE. For this purpose the

tod system contained in *P. putida* F1 was chosen to develop a *tod-lux* gene fusion to monitor the expression of toluene dioxygenase.

5.2.1 MATERIALS AND METHODS

5.2.1.1 STRAIN CONSTRUCTION

The strains and plasmids used in this example are shown in Table 6. *Escherichia coli* was grown in Luria-Bertani (LB) broth and on LB agar plates at 37°C. *Pseudomonas putida* F1 was grown on yeast extract-peptone-glucose (YEPG) medium consisting of 0.2 g yeast extract, 2.0 g polypeptone, 1.0 g D-glucose and 0.2 g ammonium nitrate (pH 7.0) in 1 L of distilled water at 28°C.

TABLE 6

STRAINS AND PLASMIDS

Strain	Plasmid	Relevant Characteristic(s)	Reference
E. coli JM109	pDTG514	pGem3Z with a 2.75-kb *Eco*R1-*Sma*I fragment from pDTG350 containing the *tod* promoter, Amp®	Menn, 1991; Menn *et al.*, 1991
E. coli HB101	pUCD615	Promoterless *luxCDABE* cassette, mob$^+$ Amp^R, Km^R	Rogowsky *et al.*, 1987
P. putida F1	none	Contains chromosomally-encoded *tod* operon for toluene degradation	Wackett and Gibson, 1988
P. putida B2	pUTK30	*tod-lux* reporter containing the *tod* promoter fragment inserted upstream of the promoterless *luxCDABE* cassette, Amp^R, Km^R	
E. coli DF1020	pRK2013	Helper plasmid, Amp^R, Km^R, Tra$^+$	Figurski and Helsinki, 1979

One-liter cultures of *E. coli* JM109 and HB101 harboring the appropriate plasmids were harvested and plasmid DNA was isolated using a modified alkaline lysis procedure (Promega, 1992). The plasmid DNA was subjected to CsCl density gradient purification, followed by butanol extraction and ethanol precipitation (Sambrook *et al.*, 1989). Plasmid DNA was resuspended in TE buffer (10 mM Tris-base, 1 mM EDTA, pH 8.0) and stored at 4°C until used. Restriction endonucleases and T4 DNA ligase were obtained from Gibco BRL (Gaithersburg, MD) and used according to manufacturers' protocols. Cloning techniques were performed as outlined in Sambrook *et al.* (1989). The reporter plasmid pUTK30 was generated by cloning the *tod* promoter (Lau *et al.*, 1994; Wang *et al.*, 1995) from pDTG514 (Menn, 1991; Menn *et al.*, 1991) in front of the *lux* gene cassette of pUCD615 (Rogowsky *et al.*, 1987). This was accomplished by directionally cloning a 2.75-kb *Eco*R1-*Xba*I fragment from pDTG514 into an *Eco*R1-*Xba*I digest of pUCD615 (FIG. 16). Transformations were performed using subcloning efficiency competent cells (Gibco BRL, Gaithersburg, MD) according to the manufacturer's protocol. Transformants were selected on LB plates containing 50 μg ml^{-1} kanamycin. Plasmid minipreps of transformants were performed as described by Holmes and Quigley (1981) and cleaved with *Bam*HI to confirm insertion of the *tod* fragment. The resultant *E. coli* strain, JBF-7 harbored the reporter plasmid pUTK30.

Triparental matings were carried out using a modified version of the filter technique. Pure cultures of donor (JBF-7, pUTK30), helper (DF1020, pRK2013; Figurski and Helsinki, 1979), and recipient (F1) were grown to an optical density at 546 nm (OD_{546}) of approximately 1.0 in LB broth with appropriate antibiotics. Cells were harvested by centrifugation at 9800 × *g* for 10 min. The pellets were suspended and washed three times in 100 ml 50 mM KH_2PO_4 (pH 7.0), and suspended in 50 ml 50 mM KH_2PO_4.

The three strains were mixed using a ratio of 2:1:1 (donor/helper/recipient). The cell suspension as filtered through a Teflon membrane (47 mM, 022 μm pore size) and the filter was placed on a LB plate. After overnight incubation at 28°C, the filter was removed and washed in 1.5 ml 50 mM KH_2PO_4. Serial dilutions were performed and dilutions were plated onto *Pseudomonas* Isolation Agar plates (Difco, Detroit, MI). After a 48-hour incubation, toluene vapor was introduced and colonies which produced

light were selected for further characterization. One of five kanamycin-resistant strains which emitted light in response to toluene vapor, *P. putida* B2, was chosen for use in the remaining studies.

5.2.1.2 BIOLUMINESCENCE ANALYSIS

In the batch and reactor studies, bioluminescence was measured using a photomultiplier, which converts the light to an electric current. The photomultiplier in the resting cell assays and the reactor system was connected to a computer and bioluminescence as namps current was recorded.

5.2.1.3 BATCH STUDIES

Assays of growing cells were conducted as described by Heitzer *et al.* (1992). An overnight culture from a frozen stock of *P. putida* B2 was prepared in a 250-ml Erlenmeyer flask containing 100 ml LB and 50 μg ml^{-1} kanamycin. A subculture was prepared and cells were used in mid-log phase (OD_{546} of 0.45-0.48). A 2.5-ml aliquot was added to 2.5 ml mineral salts medium (MSM) containing 0-50 mg L^{-1} toluene or 10-100 μl of JP4 jet fuel-saturated MSM. The concentration of toluene in water saturated with JP4 jet fuel is approximately 8 mg L^{-1} (Smith *et al.*, 1981). Bioluminescence was measured every 30 min (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992).

Cells for resting cell assays were grown on MSM supplemented with 2.7 g L^{-1} succinate. A culture of *P. putida* B2 was harvested at on OD_{546} of approximately 0.8. The cells were centrifuged at 15000 × *g* for 10 min, and resuspended in MSM to OD_{546} of 0.6 four milliliters of culture were added to each of six 26-ml vials with Mininert valves (Dynatech, Chantilly, VA) with stir bars. One vial was used for multiple toluene exposures, while the remainder were used for single exposures. The vials were magnetically stirred in a light-tight sampling cell. Toluene-saturated MSM and MSM alone were added to yield an OD_{546} of 0.47, and 10 mg L^{-1} toluene was injected six times over a 130-h period of the multiple-exposure vial. At the same time points, a single-exposure vial was injected with 10 mg L^{-1} toluene. The light response was recorded every 3 min with a photomultiplier connected to a data acquisition computer (King *et al.*, 1990).

5.2.1.4 IMMOBILIZED CELL REACTOR SYSTEM

P. putida B2 was encapsulated in alginate beads for the immobilized cell reactor system. Cells were grown in 1 L LB to an OD_{546} of 1.2 and were centrifuged at 5500 × *g* for 10 min, washed three times in 0.9% NaCl and suspended in 40 ml 0.9% NaCl. The cell suspension was added to 80 ml of an alginic acid solution (28 g L^{-1} low viscosity alginate, 0.9% NaCl) (Webb, 1992a;b). The cell-alginate suspension was placed in a 60-ml syringe, forced through a 25-gauge needle, and allowed to drop into a 0.5 M $CaCl_2$ solution. The alginate was cross-linked by the Ca^{2+} ions, thus encapsulating the cells. The cells were subsequently placed in a fresh solution of 0.1 M $CaCl_2$ and allowed to sit for 30 min prior to use.

A differential volume reactor (DVR) was used to simulate a section of an ideal plug flow reactor. Influent to the reactor was dispersed through a porous metal frit to provide a flat velocity profile to the bed. The reactor measured 5.0 cm i.d. × 5.0 cm long. A complete description of this reactor can be found in Webb *et al.* (1991). In this investigation, a system was designed incorporating the DVR as illustrated in FIG. 17. The system was equipped with three Millipore (Bedford, MA) stainless steel substrate containers rated to 690 kPa. The feed from the substrate vessels to the reactor inlet was controlled by two Filson (Middleton, WI) 301 HPLC pumps. A flow rate of 0.4 ml min^{-1} was maintained. The substrate vessels were pressurized with oxygen to provide the system with an electron acceptor. All medium vessels contained trace mineral medium (Lackey *et al.*, 1993) with the addition of 3 mg L^{-1} pyruvic acid and a 0.1 M solution of Tris-base (pH 7.0). phosphate buffers were not used since phosphate ions complex with Ca^{2+} ions and disrupt with alginate crosslinking. In addition to this medium, two of the vessels contained either TCE or toluene. The inlet concentration of toluene was altered by using square-wave perturbations with 20-h cycles (10 h with toluene, 10 h without toluene) using an HPLC pump controlled by a timer. During feed portions of the cycle, 10 mg L^{-1} toluene was introduced into the inlet of the reactor. The inlet TCE concentration was constant at 20 mg L^{-1}.

5.2.1.5 TCE AND TOLUENE ANALYSIS

Analysis of TCE in the reactor effluent was performed online using a stripping column (12.5 cm length and 0.4 cm inner diameter) packed with 3-mm glass beads to provide adequate surface area for TCE separation. TCE was stripped with helium, the GC carrier gas. The stripping column outlet was attached to a gas chromatograph (GC, Hewlett Packard (Wilmington, DE) (HP) 5890 Series II) with an electron capture detector by a heated sample line maintained at 75°C. Automatic injections (25 µl) were made by a computerized control process (HP Chem Station software). The GC was equipped with a cross-linked methyl silicone capillary column (length 30 m, i.d. 0.2 mm, 0.33-µm film thickness) while the oven was operated isothermally at 60°C. Other operating parameters included an injection temperature of 150°C, detector temperature of 200°C and a split ratio of 10:1. This system was equipped with a bypass line around the reactor in order to calibrate the stripping column.

Toluene samples were removed at 0.5-ml aliquots from the effluent sampling port (FIG. 17) and injected into 1.5 ml sample vials. Headspace analysis was performed using a Shimadzu (Columbia, MD) GC-9A gas chromatograph equipped with a 2.44-m, 3.2-mm diameter Poropak N packed column and a flame ionization detector. The isothermal temperature of the oven was 210°C, and both the detector and injector temperatures were 220°C.

5.2.2 RESULTS

5.2.2.1 BATCH STUDIES

Assays of growing cells showed an increasing bioluminescent response with increasing concentrations of toluene, up to 10 mg L^{-1} toluene, after 90 minutes exposure (FIG. 18). The relationship was linear over this range. The bioluminescent response varied from 2.4 namp at 0.1 mg/l toluene to approximately 90 namp for 10, 20 and 50 mg/l toluene. There was not a significant bioluminescent response for 0 and 0.01 mg/l toluene. Similarly, the light response increased with increasing concentration of water-soluble jet fuel components (FIG. 18). At 10 µl jet fuel-saturated MSM added (approximately 0.02 mg/l toluene), the light response was 16 namp, while at 100 µl added (approximately 0.2 mg/l toluene). The response

increased to 31 namp. The bioluminescence response for the 0.1 mg/l toluene equivalent of jet fuel was about 10 times that for 0.1 mg/l toluene, so other components beside toluene appear to have affected bioluminescence.

In resting cell assays, the bioluminescent response to single exposures of toluene was rapid and reproducible (FIG. 19). The initial injection to the multiple exposure vial showed the same characteristic light response as each single exposure vial. However, there was a slower response (the rate of increase in bioluminescence, H^{-1}) upon initial exposure to toluene compared with the response of cells previously exposed to toluene. In addition, the response rate increased with each exposure to toluene (Table 7). However, the maximum bioluminescent response for both the single and multiple exposures was the same at 573 ± 127 namp.

TABLE 7

BIOLUMINESCENT RESPONSE RATE (NAMP/HR) FOR MULTIPLE AND SINGLE EXPOSURES OF 10 MG/L TOLUENE[A]

Time Point	Multiple Exposure Vial[b]	Single Exposure Vials[c]
1	95	ND
2	321	137
3	642	67

TABLE 7 - CONTINUED

Time Point	Multiple Exposure Vial[b]	Single Exposure Vials[c]
4	768	60
5	737	60
6	973	49

[a] Response rate is defined as rate of bioluminescence increase with time.

[b] A single vial, with multiple additions of toluene.

[c] A new vial, previously unexposed to toluene, injected with toluene at each time point.

ND, not done.

5.2.2.2 IMMOBILIZED CELL REACTOR SYSTEM

The DVR system loaded with alginate-encapsulated *P. putida* B2 was used to determine the light response and TCE co-metabolism of *P. putida* B2 when exposed to toluene in immobilized systems. Experimental results showed a rapid bioluminescent response under the introduction of toluene. FIG. 20 shows light response of the reporter strain in the reactor to the change in inlet toluene concentration and removal of TCE. The data show a direct response of bioluminescence with respect to toluene concentration. During the cycle, light emission increased by 16.3 ± 1.2 namp/hr. The toluene effluent concentration approached zero after the toluene feed was stopped, and the light response in the reactor decreased at a rate of 3.4 ± 0.8 namp/hr. A direct correlation between bioluminescence and TCE degradation was observed. The maximum light response was 43.4 ± 6.8 namp. The steady-state TCE effluent concentration when toluene was being introduced into the system was 16.5 ± 0.2 mg/l (20% removal), while the effluent toluene concentration was 5.8 ± 0.1 mg/l (50% removal). This represents a ratio of 1.7 μmol toluene degraded/μmol TCE degraded. While results from the different assay types showed similar response to toluene, the magnitude of bioluminescence cannot be compared due to several differences between experimental conditions (*i.e.*, sample agitation, cell physiology, light monitoring).

5.2.3 DISCUSSION

Assays of growing cells demonstrated not only a qualitative bioluminescent response to toluene, but a quantitative response as well. There was a linear relationship between bioluminescence and toluene concentration between 0 and 10 mg/l in assays of growing cells. In addition, the bioluminescent response was proportional to dilutions of a complex environmentally relevant contaminant, jet fuel. However, the magnitude of the bioluminescent response to jet fuel was higher than would be expected if the response was due solely to the toluene in the jet fuel. Work with another bioluminescent strain has recently shown there is a significant bioluminescent response to solvents (Heitzer *et al.*, 1996). It was demonstrated that cells were limited for the aldehyde substrate of the luciferase reaction. It was hypothesized that solvents perturb the cellular membrane, causing intracellular concentrations of fatty acids to increase. Since fatty acids are reduced to the corresponding aldehydes by the *lux* enzymes, increased amounts would negate the aldehyde limitation, causing higher bioluminescence. This solvent effect might explain the observed difference in magnitude of bioluminescence between pure toluene and toluene in a solvent matrix in assays of growing cells.

Typically, in the environment, cells would not be in midlog phase of growth. Therefore, the inventors examined the bioluminescent properties under resting cell conditions as well. Even in cells with toluene as an intermittent sole carbon source, the bioluminescent response was reproducible for at least 5 days. A more rapid bioluminescent response was observed for cells previously exposed to toluene, but the maximum bioluminescence remained constant.

Immobilized *P. putida* B2 allowed on-line monitoring of degradative activity towards toluene and TCE in a DVR. The system showed a direct correlation between toluene degradation and bioluminescence. Because the *lux* and *tod* operons are under the same promoter control, bioluminescence indicated that the *tod* operon was expressed, and TCE was co-metabolized. Therefore, there was a direct mechanistic correlation between bioluminescence and TCE co-metabolism. In this study, TCE did not appear to induce the *tod* operon in *P. putida* B2 as was reported for another *P.*

putida strain (Heald and Jenkins, 1994). FIG. 20 shows that in the absence of toluene, TCE influent and effluent concentrations were equivalent and there was no bioluminescence increase.

Exposure to TCE and/or its metabolites may be toxic and may affect degradative enzyme activity. However, the intensity of bioluminescence was reproducible in successive perturbations of toluene even in the presence of TCE (FIG. 20). These data showed the *tod-lux* reporter provided an on-line measurement of *tod* gene expression, and also provided an indication of potential toxic effects due to continuous TCE exposure. At 20 mg/l TCE, there did not appear to be any toxic effects. This example demonstrated that there is a distinct and reproducible response to toluene under a variety of physiological conditions (growing and resting free cells and immobilized cells).

5.3 Example 3 -- Kinetics and Response of a *P. fluorescens* Biosensor

Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAH) are persistent environmental contaminants that are toxic and carcinogenic (Harrison *et al.*, 1975). Hundreds of sites exist nationwide that are highly contaminated at concentrations greater than grams PAH per kilogram of soil. These sites range from 1 to over 100 acres. Indigenous soil organisms have demonstrated their ability to degrade these compounds.

King *et al.* (1990) reported the construction of pUTK21 by the transcriptional fusion of the *luxCDAB* cassette and the *nahG* gene within the archetypal NAH plasmid pKA1 (King *et al.*, 1990). Burlage *et al.* (1990) also reported a similar construction. The catabolic plasmid pKA1 from which pUTK21 was engineered is organized in two operons, the naphthalene and salicylate operons, and mediates the degradation of naphthalene, salicylate, and many other pollutants (Sayler *et al.*, 1990). The pUTK21 contains two pathways, an upper pathway, which codes for the degradation of naphthalene to salicylate (the naphthalene operon), and a lower engineered pathway, which codes for the *lux* pathway. The lower pathway no longer codes for salicylate degradation as the *nahG* gene was disrupted by insertion of the *luxCDABE* cassette. Both pathways of pUTK21 are controlled by promoters induced

by salicylate (Schell, 1990). The reporter bacterium, *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44 (HK44), harbors the pUTK21. The HK44 supplements the disabled salicylate operon by naturally degrading salicylate by a pathway independent of *nah* (DiGrazia, 1991; Heitzer *et al.*, 1992; King *et al.*, 1990). A positive-quantitative relationship between bioluminescence and inducer concentration (naphthalene and salicylate) as well as degradation of these compounds was demonstrated (DiGrazia, 1991). Bioluminescence activity requires oxygen, NADPH, ATP, $FMNH_2$, and aldehyde substrate (Hastings *et al.*, 1985; Meighen, 1988, 1991). The *luxCDABE* genes code heterodimeric luciferase, reductase, transferase, and synthetase. The light reaction requires a long-chain aldehyde substrate, which is converted to a fatty acid during the light reaction. The fatty acid reductase complex (reductase, transferase, and synthetase) is essential as it regenerates the long-chain aldehyde substrate from the fatty-acid product.

Previous studies employing free HK44 indicate a linear light response with salicylate and naphthalene concentration (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992; Heitzer *et al.*, 1994). This example describes the form and parameters of salicylate by immobilized HK44. Potential differences exist in bacterial physiology between free and immobilized states. Because they are "noninvasive, nondestructive, rapid, and population specific" (DiGrazia, 1991), bioluminescent reporter strains have the potential to rapidly indicate bioavailability, degradative activity, and optimal degradation conditions *in situ* (Burlage *et al.*, 1990; Heitzer *et al.*, 1992; King *et al.*, 1990; Sayler *et al.*, 1990). The HK44 biosensor described herein may be produced by immobilizing HK44 on a light-culminating device (*e.g.*, fiber optic). The HK44 sensor could then be employed to continuously monitor conditions and degradation in soils. Uses of such a sensor could include (1) detection of plumes (*e.g.*, salicylate is a mobile daughter compound produced by the biological degradation of naphthalene and several other PAH) or (2) monitoring remediation during later stages of remediation as PAH concentrations are reduced. Provided are mathematical descriptions of salicylate degradation by immobilized HK44. An exemplary system is shown which has a packed-bed reactor (PBR) with alginate-immobilized HK44.

5.3.1 MATHEMATICAL MODELS

This example describes a plug-flow reactor with a bed of immobilized HK44. Assuming that significant flow occurs only in the axial direction, an unsteady-state shell mass balance on the bulk liquid phase from time t to $t + \Delta t$ and from position z to $z + \Delta z$ results in:

$$\int_t^{t+\Delta t}\left[\in S[C_i\bar{V}]_{z,t} - \in S[C_i\bar{V}]_{z+\Delta z,t} + \in S\left[-D_i\frac{\partial C_i}{\partial z}\right]_{z,t} - \in S\left[-D_i\frac{\partial C_i}{\partial z}\right]_{z+\Delta z,t}\right]dt$$
$$-\int_z^{z+\Delta z} N_{P_i}(1-\in)S\,dz = \int_z^{z+\Delta z}\left[S\in C_i\big|_{t+\Delta t,z} - S\in C_i\big|_{t,z}\right]dz \qquad (17)$$

Equation (17) reduces to Equation (18) by applying the mean value theorem of integral calculus, dividing through by Δz and Δt, taking limits as Δt and Δz go to 0, and substituting for the rate of mass transfer, the surface area of a spherical bead, and the superficial velocity:

$$-\bar{V}\frac{\partial C_i}{\partial z} + D_i\frac{\partial^2 C_i}{\partial z^2} = \frac{\partial C_i}{\partial t} + \frac{(1-\in)}{\in}K_i\frac{3}{r_0}(C_i - C_{P_i}\big|_{r=r_0}) \qquad (18)$$

Equation (18) can be made dimensionless by the following substitutions:

$$C_{i_0}C_{D_{P_i}} = C_{pi}, C_{i_0}C_{D_i} = C_i, C_{i_0}\theta_{si}C_{D_{S_i}} = C_{S_i},$$
$$L\Phi = z, t_r\tau = t, \text{and } r_0\varphi = r \qquad (19)$$

Equation (20) results upon substitution:

$$\frac{t_r D_{P_i}}{L^2}\frac{\partial^2 C_{D_i}}{\partial \Phi^2} - \frac{\partial C_{D_i}}{\partial \Phi} - \frac{\partial C_{D_i}}{\partial \tau} + \frac{(1-\in)}{\in}\frac{3t_r}{r_0}K_i(C_{D_i} - C_{P_i}\big|_{r=r_0}) = 0 \qquad (20)$$

The initial condition assumes a clean bed. The boundary conditions in dimensionless form are

$$\left.\frac{\partial C_{D_i}}{\partial \Phi}\right|_{\Phi=1.0} = 0 \text{ and } C_{D_i}\big|_{\Phi=0} - C_{D_i} + \frac{D_i}{\bar{V}L}\left.\frac{\partial C_{D_i}}{\partial \Phi}\right|_{\Phi=0} = 0 \qquad (21)$$

An unsteady-state mass balance on the solid phase yields:

$$\int_t^{t+\Delta t} [4\pi r^2 (\epsilon_p N_{p_i})\big|_{r,t} - 4\pi (r^2 + \Delta r)(\epsilon_p N_{p_i})\big|_{r+\Delta r,t} + 4\pi r^2 \Delta r R_i] dt = \int_r^{r+\Delta r} [(\epsilon_p C_{p_i} + C_{s_i})\big|_{r,t} - (\epsilon_p C_{p_i} + C_{s_i})\big|_{r,t+\Delta t}] dr \tag{22}$$

where liquid diffusion rate is assumed to be dominant and equilibrium is assumed in the pores. A term can be developed for the absorbed solid-phase flux by adding terms to the above development. Equation (23) results after applying the mean value theorem of integral calculus, dividing by Δz and Δt, taking limits as Δt and Δz go to zero, making the substitutions in Equation (19), and assuming linear adsorption:

$$\frac{\epsilon_p D_{p_i} t_r}{r_0^2} \frac{\partial^2 C_{D_{p_i}}}{\partial \varphi^2} + \frac{2 \epsilon_p D_{p_i} t_r}{r_0^2 \varphi} \frac{\partial C_{D_{p_i}}}{\partial \varphi} + \frac{t_r}{C_{i_0}} R_i = \frac{\partial D_{D_{p_i}}}{\partial \tau} \left(\epsilon_p + \theta_{s_i} \frac{dC_{D_{s_i}}}{dC_{D_{p_i}}} \right) \tag{23}$$

The exact form of *Ri* is unknown for this system. The Michaelis-Menten reaction model (MMRM) is general and reflects a nonlinear relationship between degradation rate and substrate concentration rate and substrate concentration. This nonlinear relationship arises from the finite degradative capacity of biological systems. At low concentrations, the MMRM approaches a reaction rate which is first order in substrate concentration. As the degradative capacity of the system is approached or exceeded, the MMRM becomes zero order in concentration. Thus a large number of conditions distributed over the reaction regime are required to properly measure the two MMRM rate constants. The reaction rate form and constants were elucidated by first comparing the steady-state behavior of the HK44 to the limiting cases of the MMRM. These limiting cases were represented mathematically as first order in salicylate and first order in biomass as:

$$-R_{Salicylate} = K_2 C_{Biomass} C_{Salicylate} \tag{24}$$

and as zero order in concentration and first order in biomass as:

$$-R_{Salicylate} = K_1 C_{Biomass} \tag{25}$$

Equations (24) and (25) each require a single rate constant instead of two as required by the Michaelis-Menten model. Practically, the linear rate models, Equations (24) and (25), provide a more stringent description of behavior than the two-parameter, nonlinear MMRM.

Initial and boundary conditions assume a clean bed, symmetry within the bead, and no accumulation at the solid interface:

$$\begin{aligned} C_{D_{P_i}}(0,\varphi) = 0, \frac{\partial C_{D_{P_i}}}{\partial \varphi} = 0, \text{and} \frac{\in_p D_{P_i}}{r_0 K_i} \frac{\partial C_{D_{P_i}}}{\partial \varphi}\Big|_{\supset=1} \\ = (C_{D_i} - C_{D_{P_i}}\big|_{\varphi=1}) \end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

Equations (20) and (23) indicate that the processes which affect the distribution and conversion of the substrate include: (1) dispersion and convective transport in the bulk phase; (2) bulk and internal solid-phase mass transfer resistance; (3) adsorption onto the alginate inside the bead pores; and (4) chemical conversion by bacteria only within the bead. A constant distribution of biomass is assumed with no growth. If growth occurs, then biomass distribution may become a function of bead radius (Kuhn *et al.*, 1991). The model was simplified for analyzing bed steady-state behavior by assuming negligible mass transfer resistance. This simplified model, when combined with the reaction rate Equation (24), has the solution (Danckwerts, 1953):

$$\frac{C_{Salicylate}}{C_{Salicylate|\Phi=0}} = \frac{4\eta \exp(Pe/2)}{(1+\eta)^2 \exp(Pe\eta/2) - (1-\eta)^2 \exp(-Pe\eta/2)} \tag{27a}$$

where:

$$\eta = \left(1 + \frac{4K_x C_{Biomass}}{\overline{V}\,Pe}\right)^{1/2} \tag{28b}$$

This simplified model, when combined with the reaction rate Equation (26) has the solution:

$$C_{Salicylate} = \frac{\vartheta \exp[Pe(\Phi-1)]}{Pe} - \vartheta\,\Phi - \frac{\vartheta}{Pe} + 1 \tag{29a}$$

where:

$$\vartheta = \frac{Lk_1}{\overline{V}} \frac{C_{Biomass}}{C_{Salicylate}\big|_{\Phi=0}} \tag{29b}$$

The unsteady-state behavior and the full model predictions could then be compared for evaluation of critical assumptions. Mathematical problems for which analytical solutions were unavailable were solved using the PDECOL software package (Madsen and Sincovec, 1979). Available analytical solutions and numerical results were compared for diffusion, transport, and reaction processes (Crank, 1975). Other investigators have also used PDECOL for simulation of PBR processes (Costa and Rodrigues, 1985).

5.3.2 Materials and Methods

A previously developed PBR system with on-line instrumentation (Webb, 1992a;b; Webb *et al.*, 1991) was used to measure bacterial degradative and bioluminescent activity under conditions mimicking those of the subsurface. The reactor design is detailed in FIG. 21. The PBR was temperature controlled and fitted with metal frits welded to the inlet and outlet to retain and distribute feed to immobilized cultures. An additional inter-cavity insert allowed the installation of

filters (*e.g.*, 0.2-mm inorganic and polymeric) between the packed bed and outlet frit that filtered the effluent for automatic injection into the on-line high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and that produced a uniform resistance to flow that improved the overall distribution to the reactor (Webb, 1992a;b). The reactor had an internal diameter of 1.34 cm, whereas the bed length could be varied from 0.8 to 11.0 cm. HPLC pumps supplied media to each reactor from pressurized feed reservoirs. All nutrients, including oxygen, entered the reactor dissolved in the liquid phase. Naphthalene and salicylate were detected with an on-line HPLC using a Vydac TP20154 column (Sep/A/Ra/Tions Group, Hesperia, CA) with a FL-4 dual-monochromator fluorescent detector (Perkin-Elmer, Norwalk, CT). Respective excitation and emission wavelengths for salicylate detection were 290 and 360 nm. The reactor was fitted with an on-line light detector for monitoring bioluminescent activity (Dunbar, 1992) consisting of a glued fiber bundle (Ensign Bickford Optics, Simsbury, CT) placed approximately 2.5 cm from the entrance of the reactor. An Oriel Inc. (Stratford, CT) 7070 photomultiplier detection system using a Model 77348 photomultiplier tube (radiant sensitivity of 80 MA/W near 500 nm) were employed.

A second apparatus simulated flow passed through an alginate biosensor. The apparatus was composed of a flow cell and a Hamamatsu photodiode (Bridgewater, NJ) with an attached layer of HK44 immobilized in alginate. The flow cell volume was 5 ml, whereas the flow rate was maintained at 1.5 ml/min. The concentration of salicylate was varied while the light was monitored with the photodiode. Mineral salts media was used for these experiments with varying concentration of inducer.

Mineral salts media (pH 7.2) consisting of $MgSO_4\ 7H_2O$ (0.1 g/l), NH_4NO_3 (0.2 g/l), trizma™ base (3.03 g/l), MgO (1.0×10^{-3} g/l), $CaCl_2$ (2.9×10^{-4} g/l), $FeCl_3 \cdot 6H_20$ (5.4×10^{-4} g/l), $ZnSO_4 \cdot 7H_20$ (1.4×10^{-4} g/l), $CuSO_4$ (2.5×10^{-5} g/l), H_3BO_4 (6.2×10^{-6} g/l), and $Na_2MoO_4 \cdot H_20$ (4.9×10^{-5} g/l) were supplied to the reactor with an appropriate carbon source for degradation and bioluminescence studies. Kinetic bacterial studies were phosphate limited and maintained aerobic by controlled pressurization of feeds and the reactor.

The HK44 was prepared for immobilization by adding freshly thawed inoculum (frozen at -70°C until use) to 100 mL of YEPG media which contained

glucose (1.0 g/l), polypeptone (2.0 g/l), yeast extract (0.2 g/l), NH_4NO_3 (0.2 g/l), and tetracycline (14 mg/l). The culture was shaken for 15 hours at 25°C and then centrifuged at 8000 rpm for 10 minutes. The pellet was then washed with 0.9% NaCl solution three times before immobilization. The concentration of HK44 was enumerated by measuring optical density at 546 nm. The HK44 was immobilized by suspending bacteria in 0.9% NaCl solution and mixing with a low-viscosity alginate (28 g/L) and NaCl (9 g/L) solution in a ratio of 1:2 by volume. Beads were formed by controlled dropwise addition to 0.1 M $CaCl_2$ solution by a syringe needle installed in an air jet (Klein *et al.*, 1983) controlled by a precision regulator (Porter Instrument Co., Hatfield, PA) and a piece of 0.003-in. (i.d.) tubing. Beads diameters were measured using gentle wet sieving. Alginate beads were dissolved in 50 mM sodium hexametaphosphate.

Naphthalene and sodium salicylate adsorption isotherms on calcium alginate were measured using batch equilibrium and breakthrough curve methods (Ruthyen, 1984). Residence time distributions for dispersion and liquid-phase mass transfer measurements were evaluated using salicylate (0.1 M), potassium, and/or bromide (1.0 M) introduced through a six-port HPLC valve up-stream of the reactor. Tracer concentrations were measured using a Waters ion-chromatography system with a series 510 HPLC pump, IC-PAK anion exchange column, and 431 conductance detector (Waters, Cam-bridge, MA) or monitored continuously using fluorescence.

5.3.3. ABIOTIC PROPERTIES

Typically, almost all of the bead diameters ranged between 3.9×10^{-2} and 7.5×10^{-2} cm. For example, 4, 65, and 31 wt % were retained on 7.5×10^{-2}, 4.5×10^{-2}, and 3.9×10^{-2} cm screens, respectively. Salicylate did not measurably absorb onto the alginate, whereas the naphthalene isotherm was linear with a dimensionless ratio of 8.4 (FIG. 22). Final equilibrium liquid-phase concentration ranged from 0.0 to 1.5×10^{-4} M, whereas solid concentrations ranged to 1.1×10^{-3} moles of naphthalene per liter of alginate. Dispersion was measured by linearizing the analytical relationships derived by Haynes and Sarma (1973), as suggested by Ruthven (1984). Slopes ranged between 1×10^{-2} and 2×10^{-2} m^2/min, indicating that dispersion was on

the order of 10^{-2} cm^2/min. Comparison of reactor volumes and average residence times demonstrated that channeling was not significant. As mentioned in other studies (Webb, 1992a;b), hydrophobic filters effected a uniform resistance to flow over the reactor outlet and greatly improved flow characteristics. Blot numbers ranged around 100 and indicate that mass transfer was not significant (Merchant *et al.*, 1987).

Alginate appears to be a good immobilization media for naphthalene and salicylate reporter bacteria due to its favorable transport and adsorption properties. Also, alginate may be formed into shapes useful for sensor applications (*e.g.*, as a thin sheet attached directly to a light probe) (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994). Salicylate and naphthalene are good test compounds because naphthalene is an abundant environmental pollutant and generally found with other PAH contaminants, whereas salicylate is a metabolite of naphthalene and several other PAH. Care should be taken in choosing an immobilization matrix for detecting other PAH, because larger PAH may significantly deviate from these model compounds in their solubility and absorption characteristics.

5.3.4 KINETIC EVALUATION OF *P. FLUORESCENS* HK44

Different combinations of feed concentrations, biomass, and flow rates, listed in columns 2 to 4 of Table 8, were varied in 18 studies to determine the form of the degradation rate equation and associated constants. Five charges of immobilized cells used for these studies are indicated by a number designation in column 1. Liquid-phase mass transfer was estimated using the correlation of Kataoka *et al.* (1973). Steady-state behavior was achieved within several bed volumes after a perturbation, consistent with predictions by Equations (20) and (23) using measured parameters. Bacterial degradative activity was then constant, although a small amount of drift was noticed in some studies (indicated by higher standard deviations). Ranges for biomass, salicylate concentration, and residence time were 1.9×10^9 to 3.5×10^9 cells/ml, 2.25 to 4.5 mg/l, and 14 to 150 min, respectively. Salicylate was supplied to the reactor at or below 4.5 mg/l. Stoichiometric levels of dissolved oxygen might prove toxic to HK44 at high salicylate concentration. Concentrations above this range

would probably not be realistic as very few PAH are soluble at greater than 1-mg/l concentrations (Lee *et al.*, 1979). Salicylate conversion, listed in column 5, ranged from 9% to 92%, with standard deviations ranging from 1.08% to 2.96% normalized to the effluent concentrations. Standard deviations and average conversions in column 5 were calculated using an average of 100 data points for each case.

Five independent studies were repeated and demonstrated reproducible relationships between substrate conversion, biomass, feed concentration, and re-actor residence time: (1) studies 4b and 3d had conversions of 0.62; (2) studies 4f and 4c had con-versions of 0.50; (3) studies 3e and 4d had respective conversions of 0.41 and 0.39; (4) studies la and lc had respective conversions of 0.64 and 0.73; and (5) studies 3c and 3f had respective conversions of 0.77 and 0.70.

Equation (27), using the degradative rate constant as the sole adjustable parameter, provided a good description of the experimental data. As depicted in FIG. 23 and FIG. 24, the reaction rate decreased with decreasing substrate concentration. The regressed degradation rate constants from experimental sets 1a-c, 3a-f, and 4a-f were tightly grouped. The rate constants obtained using the full data set and subsets were: (1) 2.23×10^{-2} dm^3 g^{-1} min^{-1} fitted to the complete set; (2) 1.88×10^{-2} fitted to subset la-c; (3) 2.85×10^{-2} fitted to subset 2a-c; (4) 2.06×10^{-2} fitted to subset 3a-f; and (5) 2.28×10^{-2} fitted to subset 4a-f. FIG. 23 and FIG. 24 demonstrate good agreement between the full data set and Equation (27) using 2.23×10^{-2}. Study 2a-c contributed the most to the total residual for all 18 studies. DiGrazia (1991) found that naphthalene degradation by HK44 could be described by a rate term which was first order in naphthalene and first order in biomass.

Equation (28) was less appropriate for describing the kinetics of HK44 than Eq. (271). Residuals were generally an order of magnitude larger than those using Equation (27). Also, the fundamental relationships suggested by Eq. (282) were not born out by the data. The rate constants obtained using Eq. (28) ranged over almost half an order of magnitude, 4.33×10^{-5} to 1.35×10^{-4} min^{-1}.

TABLE 8

STEADY-STATE DEGRADATION AND LIGHT PRODUCTION BY *P. FLUORESCENS* HK44 AS A FUNCTION OF BIOMASS, FEED CONCENTRATION, AND RESIDENCE TIME

Experiment	Biomass (cells/mL)	Sodium salicylate (mg/L)	τ (min)	Salicylate effluent $\pm \sigma$ (mg/L)	Bioluminescence $\pm \sigma$- (nA)
la	3.3×10^9	2.25	14	$1.43 \pm 2.85 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable
1b	3.3×10^9	2.25	58	$0.46 \pm 0.84 \times 10$-^{2}	Unavailable
1c	3.3×10^9	2.25	14	$1.65 \pm 4.77 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable
2a	3.5×10^9	2.47	24	$1.03 \pm 2.83 \times 10^{-2}$	$2.71 \pm 4.0 \times 10^{-2}$
2b	3.5×10^9	2.47	26	$0.86 \pm 0.93 \times 10^{-2}$	$1.81 \pm 2.0 \times 10^{-2}$
2c	3.5×10^9	2.47	94	$0.20 + 0.28 \times 10^{-2}$	$0.16 + 2.0 \times 10^{-2}$
3a	1.9×10^9	4.45	15	$4.06 \pm 8.85 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable
3b	1.9×10^9	4.45	18	$3.84 \pm 6.99 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable
3c	1.9×10^9	4.45	24	$3.42 \pm 8.55 \times 0^{-2}$	$3.07 \pm 1.0 \times 10^{-1}$
3d	1.9×10^9	4.45	36	$2.77 + 4.24 \times 10^{-2}$	$2.26 + 1.0 \times 10^{-2}$
3e	1.9×10^9	4.45	72	$1.81 \pm 5.36 \times 10^{-2}$	$0.95 + 5.0 \times 10^{-2}$
3f	1.9×10^9	4.45	24	$3.12 \pm 4.09 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable
4a	1.9×10^9	4.45	29	$3.07 \pm 6.45 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable

TABLE 8 - CONTINUED

Experiment	Biomass (cells/mL)	Sodium salicylate (mg/L)	τ (min)	Salicylate effluent $\pm\ \sigma$ (mg/L)	Bioluminescence $\pm\ \sigma$- (nA)
4b	1.9×10^{9}	4.45	36	$2.76 \pm 3.95 \times 10^{-2}$	Unavailable
4c	1.9×10^{9}	4.45	48	$2.25 \pm 3.47 \times 10^{-2}$	$2.17 + 8.0 \times 10^{-2}$
4d	1.9×10^{9}	4.45	72	$1.75 \pm 2.03 \times 10^{-2}$	$1.61 \pm 6.0 \times 10^{-2}$
4e	1.9×10^{9}	4.45	150	$0.89 \pm 1.54 \times 10^{-2}$	$0.83 \pm 6.0 \times 10^{-2}$
4f	1.9×10^{9}	4.45	48	$2.24 + 3.49 \times 10^{-2}$	$2.53 \pm 4.7 \times 10^{-1}$
5a	1.9×10^{9}	2.5	15	Unavailable	$1.60 \pm 1.90 \times 10^{-1}$
5b	1.9×10^{9}	2.5 (naphthalene 8.0)	15	Unavailable	$4.79 \pm 3.18 \times 10^{-1}$

Model predictions and data both demonstrate that salicylate conversion was limited by reaction rate and not mass transfer effects. Flow rates, effectiveness factors, Thiele modulus, Reynolds numbers, and Biot numbers are listed in Table 9. Biot numbers were on the order of 100. Effectiveness factor calculations using the best-fit first-order reaction rate constant indicate that the beads were limited by the reaction rate and not by internal mass transfer resistance. The good fit obtained using the analytical solution, wherein external and internal mass transfer was assumed negligible, also support the conclusion that mass transfer effects were minimal. The model predicts that the salicylate distribution reaches a steady state within an alginate bead (99% of final) in about 7 minutes. Even assuming that the diffusion coefficient was reduced by an order of magnitude in the alginate matrix, a steady state was reached within 15 min. Oyass *et al.* (1995) found that diffusion coefficients in calcium alginate were approximately 85% that in water for nine solutes (mono- and disaccharides and organic acids). Cell volume estimated at less than 1% probably had little effect on diffusion (Westrin and Axelsson, 1991). The model also predicted that liquid mass transfer resistance would have little effect on reaching steady state. In the case of an adsorbing substrate such as naphthalene, the model demonstrates that adsorption must be taken into account. A positive 50% error in the measured adsorption coefficient would result in doubling the time required to reach steady state. The model predicted that steady state for naphthalene was achieved in approximately 1 hour starting from a clean alginate bed. Model parameters have been measured (liquid mass transfer coefficient, pellet void volume, and adsorption coefficients), reported (liquid diffusion coefficient) (Dunbar, 1992), and estimated (solid diffusion coefficient) (Treybal, 1980). Respective coefficients for naphthalene were 9.0×10^{-6} $cm^2\ s^{-1}$, 9.0×10^{-8} $cm^2\ s^{-1}$ and 8.4 $cm^2\ s\ mol^{-1}$ for liquid diffusion, solid diffusion, and Langmuir equilibrium constants. Companion free cell studies are needed to further aid evaluation of free and immobilized kinetics and response.

TABLE 9

FLOW RATES, REYNOLDS NUMBERS, THIELE MODULI, EFFECTIVENESS FACTORS, AND BIOT NUMBERS[1]

Study	Flow Rate (cm/s)	Reynolds Number	Biot Number	Thiele Modulus	Effectiveness Factor
1A	1.17×10^{-2}	2.65×10^{-1}	1.53×10^{2}	9.25×10^{-1}	9.47×10^{-1}
1B	2.92×10^{-3}	6.62×10^{-2}	9.66×10^{1}	9.25×10^{-1}	9.47×10^{-1}
1C	1.17×10^{-2}	2.65×10^{-1}	1.53×10^{2}	9.25×10^{-1}	9.47×10^{-1}
2A	1.17×10^{-2}	2.65×10^{-1}	1.53×10^{2}	9.07×10^{-1}	9.49×10^{-1}
2B	1.05×10^{-2}	2.38×10^{-1}	1.48×10^{2}	9.07×10^{-1}	9.49×10^{-1}
2C	2.92×10^{-3}	6.62×10^{-2}	9.66×10^{1}	9.07×10^{-1}	9.49×10^{-1}
3A	1.17×10^{-2}	2.65×10^{-1}	1.53×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
3B	9.36×10^{-3}	2.12×10^{-1}	1.42×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
3C	7.02×10^{-3}	1.59×10^{-1}	1.29×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
3D	7.02×10^{-3}	1.59×10^{-1}	1.29×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
3E	4.68×10^{-3}	1.06×10^{-1}	1.13×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	8.71×10^{-1}
3F	2.34×10^{-3}	5.30×10^{-2}	8.97×10^{1}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
4A	1.17×10^{-2}	2.65×10^{-1}	1.53×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	8.71×10^{-1}
4B	9.36×10^{-3}	2.12×10^{-1}	1.42×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}

TABLE 9 - CONTINUED

Study	Flow Rate (cm/s)	Reynolds Number	Biot Number	Thiele Modulus	Effectiveness Factor
4C	7.02×10^{-3}	1.59×10^{-1}	1.29×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
4D	7.02×10^{-3}	1.59×10^{-1}	1.29×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
4E	4.68×10^{-3}	1.06×10^{-1}	1.13×10^{2}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}
4F	2.34×10^{-3}	5.30×10^{-2}	8.97×10^{1}	6.77×10^{-1}	9.71×10^{-1}

[1] Flow rates approached creeping flow. Blot numbers ranged around 100, indicating that fluid-phase mass transfer was not significant. Effectiveness factors approached 1.0, indicating that the reaction rate mostly limited the overall reaction rate.

5.3.5 BIOLUMINESCENCE

Control studies were conducted to determine the effect of glucose, and mineral salts media (no carbon) on the light emission of HK44. Measured effluent oxygen levels were always in large excess (> 10 ppm). Significant growth of HK44 was improbable as phosphate was not supplied to the reactor. Glucose is not an inducer for the *lux* pathway. Bioluminescent activity was constant and minimal using only mineral salts media. In further studies, glucose in mineral salts media was supplied to HK44 at 5 mg/L at a flow rate of 1.0 mL/min. When exposed to glucose, light emission was orders of magnitude less than the salicylate response but rose slowly for 26 hours above baseline noise. Emission was then steady for 12 hours until glucose was removed from the feed. Glucose is an excellent carbon and energy source and could possibly increase pools of one or more of the light substrates. Schell (1990) found that low levels *of nah* mRNA were present in uninduced cells. The trizma™ base buffer in the mineral salts feed maintained the pH at 7.2, even for studies with long residence times. Thus, pH does not appear to be a factor in the light response. These data suggest that the slight increase in light emission resulted from increased pools of reaction substrates and the presence of low, constitutive levels of *lux* enzymes.

During degradation studies, glucose solution was added to the reactor at a constant concentration throughout the study. Inducer was added 15 hours after starting the study. In almost all cases, light intensity mimicked the change in salicylate concentrations. As inducer increased, light intensity increased. Conversely, when inducer concentrations were decreased, light intensity decreased. The one exception to this behavior was observed only at the beginning of a study when a clean bed of HK44 was initially shocked by a step change in inducer concentration. Under this shock condition, light production initially increased orders of magnitude and reached a maximum approximately one residence time later (FIG. 25). Within four to six residence times, light intensity approached a steady state. In contrast, effluent concentrations became constant within two residence times. Thus, the unsteady-state light emission might result from an initial buildup of salicylate within the cell due to the rapid change in the salicylate bulk phase concentration and an imbalance between

transport through the cell membrane and degradation. Also, addition of the glucose for 15 hours prior to addition of the inducer may have increased the light substrate pools, resulting in an oversupply of *lux* cofactors. Thus, further research would be appropriate for investigating this transient phenomena. For example, cofactor concentrations might be directly measured as a function of supplied substrates.

FIG. 26 depicts the average specific light response (light per unit biomass) as a function of predicted salicylate concentration at the light probe. The data in FIG. 26, obtained during degradation studies, are depicted as averages and standard deviations. During all studies, oxygen was maintained at a level that exceeded the stoichiometric demand. Oxygen effluent concentrations were always greater than several milligrams per liter. The light intensity depicted in FIG. 26 is reported as a function of the local inducer concentration at the light probe rather than the effluent concentration. The local salicylate concentrations were calculated using the model and parameters previously discussed. The purpose of FIG. 26 is to qualitatively compare the relationship between emission and inducer concentration. There was a positive relationship between light emission and inducer concentration. Best-fit lines had slopes of 1.4, 2.3, and 1.5 for studies 2a-c, 3c-e, and 4c-f, respectively. The present analysis must be treated qualitatively because light values were relative within a study as there was no reference light source for calibration between studies (*e.g.*, variable alginate opacity). Thus, the true intercepts for the curves are unknown; however, the slopes were similar and indicate that light emission was a positive function of inducer concentration.

Studies were conducted to investigate the response to naphthalene (a parent compound of salicylate). Salicylate was added to the PBR as a control at 16 hours (study 5a). The response to salicylate was the same as in previous studies. Light emission was allowed to become steady prior to naphthalene addition.

The light response of alginate-immobilized HK44 was intense upon the addition of naphthalene at 45 hours. The steady-state response of HK44 to naphthalene was approximately two orders of magnitudes greater than the response to salicylate under identical conditions. These results were verified when studies were repeated.

In a second set of studies conducted independently of the degradation studies, light intensity was measured as a function of inducer concentration. The degradation studies were not well suited for measuring light response. In these studies, HK44 was immobilized in a thin layer of alginate affixed to a photodiode. A very short residence time (3 minutes.) was maintained within the flow cells. Further, these studies differed from those of the degradation studies in that the cells were not shocked by a step change in inducer concentration. Rather, the salicylate concentration was gradually increased. FIGs. 27 and 28 depict the light response and inducer concentration. Light intensity mimicked the inducer concentration, although there was a lag. In the naphthalene study, a much longer lag was observed than in the salicylate study. The lag was probably caused, at least in part, by mass transport from the bulk solution to the immobilized cells and, in the case of naphthalene, by adsorption onto the alginate. The differences in lag times may also be the result of the different ways that naphthalene and salicylate are transported in to the cell and consumed. In this set of studies as well as previous studies (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994), unsteady-state behavior mimicked the inducer concentration.

The HK44 demonstrated a strong response at part-per-million concentrations for both naphthalene and salicylate. PAH concentrations in soils are typically observed in parts per thousand. Optimal use of HK44 would be the detection of plume fronts where PAH and degradation product concentrations are much reduced. The HK44 was much more sensitive to naphthalene than to salicylate. Uptake mechanisms, energy levels of inducers, and effects of inducer on cell membrane liquidity possibly contribute to differences in the response to HK44 to these compounds. Naphthalene preferentially absorbs to lipids, which potentially affects membrane liquidity and may result in increased aldehyde substrates from lipid synthesis. Furthermore, naphthalene uptake is probably passive (Bateman *et al.*, 1986). Because salicylate is a charged ion, uptake may occur by active transport. Because naphthalene is a greater carbon and energy source than salicylate, naphthalene might increase *lux* substrates resulting in elevated light intensity.

5.3.6 NOMENCLATURE

$C_{biomass}$	biomass concentration (g cells/dm^3)
C_{D_i}	dimensionless concentration of component *i* in bulk phase
$C_{D_{P_i}}$	dimensionless concentration of component *i* in the liquid phase inside the pores of the particle
$C_{D_{S_i}}$	dimensionless adsorbed solid-phase concentration of component *i*
C_i	bulk-feed concentration of component *i* (mol/dm^3)
C_{i_0}	feed concentration of component *i* (mol/dm^3)
C_{P_i}	pore concentration of component *i* (mol/dm^3)
C_{S_i}	absorbed solid-phase concentration of component *i* (mol/dm^3)
$C_{salicylate}$	concentration (mol/dm^3)
D_i	dispersion coefficient of component i (dm^2/s)
D_{P_i}	pore diffusivity of component *i* (dm^2/s)
K_1	rate constant (mol/s g cells)
K_2	rate constant (dm^3/s g cells)
K_i	liquid-phase mass transfer coefficient (dm/s)
L	bed length (dm)
N_{P_i}	rate of mass transfer (mol/s dm^3)
Pe	Peclet number with bed length as the characteristic length
r	position in the particle (dm)
r_0	particle radius (dm)
R_i	reaction rate (mol/dm^3 s)
$R_{Salicylate}$	salicylate reaction rate (mol/dm^3 s)
S	surface area (dm^2)
t	time (s)
tr	mean residence time in the bed (s)
V	interstitial velocity (dm/s)
z	position in the column (dm)
Φ	dimensionless position in column
φ	dimensionless position in the particle

ε	bed void volume
ε_p	particle void volume
ι	dimensionless time
ϑ_{s_i}	dimensionless ratio of absorbed concentration in equilibrium with the maximum feed concentration of component *i*

5.4 EXAMPLE 4 – DEPLOYMENT OF ENCAPSULATED BIOLUMINESCENT BACTERIA IN NUTRIENT-DEPLETED ENVIRONMENTS

P. fluorescens HK44 generate blue-green light when exposed to naphthalene or salicylate. The genes for bioluminescence are located in a plasmid that carries a transcriptional fusion between the promoter of a salicylate hydroxylase gene, *nahG*, of a naphthalene-degradation pathway and a promoterless *luxCDABE* gene cassette of *Vibrio fisheri* (King *et al.*, 1990). The promoterless *lux* operon and activity are described elsewhere (Shaw *et al.*, 1988).

In earlier studies, the quantity of induced light produced by HK44 cells has been shown to be proportional to the amount of exposed naphthalene or salicylate (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992, 1994). In liquid assays, the cells have been shown to display a linear luminescence response with 0.72 μg/l to 3.25 mg/l naphthalene and 0.4 mg/l to 20 mg/l salicylate (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992). The cells have also been shown useful in bioassays for the detection of naphthalene in environmental contaminants (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994). In the demonstration of an optical on-line biosensor with HK44, immobilized cells also proved applicable as they emitted a specific luminescence response when exposed to naphthalene in soil slurries, JP-4 jet fuel and leachate of manufactured gas plant soil (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992, 1994). The information from these studies has suggested that bioluminescent technology might be used in the assessment of bioavailability and biodegradation of environmental pollutants that are significant when endpoints and regulatory standards are determined (Gibson and Sayler 1992; Heitzer and Sayler, 1993).

Bioluminescence is an expensive metabolic function as it consumes molecular O_2, and requires reduced flavin mononucleotide, and the synthesis of an aldehyde substrate (Hastings *et al.*, 1985). The aldehyde must be regenerated through an ATP-

and NADPH-mediated cyclic reaction during extended emission of light (Ulitzur *et al.*, 1981). The physiological burdens raise basic questions regarding the intrinsic capacity of HK44 and similar genetically engineered strains such as *Pseudomonas putida* B2 (Applegate *et al.*, 1993) to produce stable and specific bioluminescence, upon induction in nutritionally challenged environments.

5.4.1 MATERIALS AND METHODS

5.4.1.1 BACTERIAL STRAINS

The bioluminescent bioreporter, *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44 (German collection of microorganism) was used in this study (King *et al.*, 1990). HK44 carries the catabolic plasmid pUTK21 (nah^+, sal^-, tet^+), which contains a *nah-lux* transcriptional fusion that allows monitoring of naphthalene and salicylate availability and degradation. The *lux* genes cassette, *luxCDABE*, is transfused to the *nahG* gene of the *sal* operon and inhibits the catabolism of salicylate via the plasmid-encoded pathway. The salicylate is, however, degraded by enzymes coded by chromosomal genes.

5.4.1.2 CULTURE CONDITIONS

Strain HK44 was grown in 500-ml conical flasks containing 100 ml yeast extract/peptone/glucose (YEPG) growth medium with 14 mg/l tetracycline. The composition of YEPG is described elsewhere (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992). The culture was grown at 27°C on a shaker.

The organism was grown to exponential phase in YEPG medium (A_{546} 0.8), immobilized in an alginate/$SrCl_2$ matrix and incubated in groundwater. Simulated groundwater was prepared in the laboratory, from a recipe provided by the *in situ* groundwater team at Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN. This recipe was based on the composition of various groundwater samples analyzed by this team when studying groundwater contamination. Simulated groundwater contained (mg/liter distilled water) the following ingredients: $CaCl_2$ 166, $MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ 85, $BaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ 1.8, $SrCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ 0.6, $FeSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ 25, and KNO_3 17. Double-strength groundwater was prepared and diluted with the respective buffer solutions to

yield single-strength groundwater with pH levels 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7. The following stocks of buffer solutions were used in adjusting the groundwater to the desired pH. A solution of 0.2 M potassium hydrogen phthalate/0.2 M HCl was used to adjust the groundwater to pH levels 3 and 4, a solution of 0.2 M potassium hydrogen phthalate/0.2 M HCl for pH 7. The groundwater was thoroughly mixed, passed through Whatman filter-paper and sterilized by autoclaving.

5.4.1.3 INCUBATION AND INDUCTION

Encapsulated HK44 was incubated in groundwater and in 0.1 × YEPG medium. The encapsulation was done as described elsewhere (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994). A 500-mg sample of alginate beads, encapsulating HK44, were dispensed into sterile 25-ml vials (Pierce, Ill.) containing 3 ml incubation medium, *i.e.*, groundwater (for nutrient deficiency) and 0.1 × YEPG (for nutrient surplus). For every type of incubation medium, enough vials were prepared such that a set of triplicate vials could be sacrificed for induction and analysis. There were 6 induction days: 1, 7, 14, 21, 28 and 35. All vials were incubated at 27°C.

Induction of cells was initiated by adding 1 ml induction solution to the vials. Light output was measured every 30 minutes from time zero up to 5 hours. For the control, representing the uninduced light response, 1 ml distilled water and YEP solution were added to triplicate vials from each type of incubation medium. The light values, if any, were adjusted as the background light from the light obtained from the respective treatment.

5.4.1.4 INDUCER SOLUTIONS

Simple (SS) and complex (CS) inducer solutions were used in this experiment. The former consisted of sodium salicylate dissolved in distilled water, the latter consisted of sodium salicylate in YEP solution. Both solutions provided a final concentration of approximately 100 mg/l sodium salicylate. YEP in CS denotes yeast extract and polypeptone at 0.2 g/1 and 2 g/1 distilled water respectively.

5.4.1.5 Light Measurements

Bioluminescence was detected using a photomultiplier tube and measured in amperes, as previously described (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992). The light output is presented as nA/cfu.

5.4.1.6 Population Counts

The numbers of viable-cell-colony-forming units (cfu) of HK44 were determined for the encapsulated beads. Encapsulated HK44 were freed by dissolving the alginate matrix with 0.5 M sodium hexametaphosphate, serially diluted in phosphate-buffered saline and spread on YEPG/agar plates containing 14 mg/l tetracycline. The plates were incubated at 27°C for 36-60 hours and the bacterial colonies were counted.

5.4.1.7 HPLC Analysis

The concentration of salicylate was determined by high-performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) before and after the induction response. A 2-ml sample of supernatant was withdrawn from each vial of a set for each treatment type and filtered through 0.2-µm-pore-size Teflon membrane filters to remove cells and debris of alginate beads prior to HPLC analysis. The HPLC unit consisted of a LC 250 binary pump (Perkin-Elmer, Groton, CT) and a Supelcosil LC-18 column (Supelco, Bellefonte, PA.) and a LS-235 photodiode array detector (Perkin-Elmer). Chromatographic conditions were a continuous gradient from 0 to 60% aqueous acetonitrile between 0.5 minutes and 8 minutes and a second continuous gradient from 60% to 100% acetonitrile between 9 minutes and 14 minutes. The program ended with column equilibration for 2.0 minutes with 100% water. HPLC-grade acetonitrile and water were used in the analysis. The UV absorbance for salicylate was determined by running a 20-µl volume of the sample and detecting the peaks at wavelengths of 255 nm. The concentrations were calculated from a standard curve prepared with known quantities of the sodium salicylate dissolved in high-quality water.

5.4.2 RESULTS

Data represent results from one of the three separate repetitions of this example. Encapsulated *P. fluorescens* HK44 responded to induction with both SS and CS after incubation in groundwater and 0.1 × YEPG. The response time, bioluminescence magnitude and survivability varied depending on the pH and composition of the inducer solution. The observations were made the 5 hours of induction for the 6 different days. Throughout the experiment, the pH of the incubation medium fluctuated within ± 0.25 unit.

5.4.2.1 INDUCTION WITH SS AND CS

The sodium salicylate in the inducer solution induced the *lux* genes and increased light emission over time (FIG. 29A and FIG. 29B). No bioluminescence was observed from cells in groundwater with pH less than 6 for either of the inducers. In the other incubation conditions shown in FIGs. 29A and FIG. 29B, the logarithmic light levels indicate the specific and maximum response within the 5-hours post-induction period. The light levels were normalized on the basis of the number of viable cells (cfu) in the alginate/$SrCl_2$ beads. The light levels were one order of magnitude higher with CS and than with SS.

As shown for induction by SS in FIG. 29A, log luminescence remained consistent in pH 6 groundwater on all days except day 1, the light magnitude ranging between $2e^{-6}$ and $9e^{-6}$ nA cfu^{-1}. In pH 7 groundwater and 0.1 × YEPG, a cyclic pattern in the magnitude of the maximum light was observed. For instance, the response declined gradually during the first half of the experiment and progressively increased on later inductions (days 28 and 35).

When induced with CS, distinct responses were observed in groundwater and in 0.1 × YEPG. As shown in FIG. 29B, the light levels from cells in pH 6 groundwater and at pH 7 were roughly stable on all the induction days. The responses observed in groundwater at pH 6 and 7 were almost similar in pattern when compared to the response in 0.1 × YEPG, which steadily declined over the days. Nonetheless, with SS or CS, encapsulated HK44 indicated a capability for periodic induction for at least 35 days.

The lag time for response may be considered a vital indicator of the physiological status of the encapsulated cells. This was measured as the time interval in which the light level increased above the time-zero level. In groundwater at pH 6 and 7, the lag time remained the same for the first 3 induction days and was then extended at pH 7 by about 1 hour with SS. In 0.1 × YEPG, however, it remained the same on all the induction days. Interestingly, the lag time was same on all days regardless of the incubation medium with CS.

5.4.2.2 SALICYLATE UPTAKE BY IMMOBILIZED HK44

The concentration of salicylate before and after induction was used to calculate the percentage of salicylate uptake. The percentage specific uptake was determined from the number of viable cells (cfu). The data indicate that salicylate was well in excess during the 5-hour period, as only 50%-60% of the initial concentration was utilized (FIG. 30A and FIG. 30B). In the presence of SS, the percentage uptake in pH 7 groundwater was highly consistent compared to in pH 6 groundwater and 0.1 × YEPG, indicating the combined effect of pH and starvation on encapsulated cells. With CS, on the other hand, uptake remained almost constant (approx. 20%), at pH 6 for all inductions except on days 1 and 35, displaying a stable response by encapsulated cells. In pH 7 groundwater and 0.1 × YEPG, a cyclic pattern was observed with a gradual decline until day 21 and a steady increase on days 28 and 35.

5.4.2.3 SURVIVABILIY OF IMMOBILIZED HK44

The cell viability was determined by plating an aliquot of the dissolved bead suspension on tetracycline (14 mg/l) containing YEPG/agar medium. The numbers of colony-forming units are shown in FIG. 31. These values were stable in 0.1 × YEPG, and groundwater at pH 6 and pH 7 during the 35-day period. They were highly affected in groundwater with pH below 6 and declined below the detection level on day 21. They became detectable on days 28 and 35 for unknown reasons.

5.4..4 BIOLUMINESCENCE REACTION RATE

Light production was monitored every 30 minutes and the reaction rate was calculated as nA min^{-1} cfu^{-1} for all assay times within the 5-hours post-induction period. A set of normalized light levels are plotted in FIG. 32A and FIG. 32B for pH 6, pH 7 groundwaters and 0.1 × YEPG. The light levels indicate a linear increase in luminescence over time in the presence of saturating concentrations of salicylate. However, the trend and magnitude of the rate increase differed, depending on the induction day and solution. For the two inducer solutions, the rate increase in pH 6 groundwater, on all the induction days, was lower with SS than with CS. On day 1, the delayed response may be attributed to non-acclimatization of cells. In the case pH 7 groundwater and 0.1 × YEPG, the response trend and magnitude were comparably similar.

The slopes from the regression fit for the light response are shown in Table 10 for each of the induction events. With SS, except on day 1, the slope in pH 6 groundwater was stable within the same order of magnitude. However, with CS the absolute value of the slope increased with increasing days of incubation. With SS, the slope values in pH 7 groundwater and 0.1 × YEPG fluctuated in magnitude. Regardless of the inducers, increased slope values were observed in groundwater at pH 6 and 7 during the later stages of the experiment.

TABLE 10

RATE OF CHANGE OF BIOLUMINESCENCE RESPONSE[A]

Inducer	Time (Days)	Incubation Medium pH 6 GW	pH 7 GW	0.1 × YEPG
SS	1	$1.48e^{-9}$ (>0.99)	$1.31e^{-6}$ (0.96)	$5.78e^{-8}$ (0.88)
	7	$3.94e^{-7}$ (0.98)	$5.84e^{-8}$ (0.93)	$1.24e^{-7}$ (0.95)
	14	$8.78e^{-7}$ (0.98)	$1.64e^{-8}$ (0.90)	$4.58e^{-9}$ (0.84)
	21	$3.2e^{-7}$ (0.97)	$9e^{-10}$ (0.93)	$1.56e^{-8}$ (0.1)
	28	$5.56e^{-7}$ (0.97)	$5.68e^{-9}$ (0.90)	$1.91e^{-7}$ (0.96)
	35	$1.01e^{-6}$ (0.98)	$1.87e^{-7}$ (0.86)	$8.84e^{-8}$ (0.70)
CS	1	$1.49e^{-6}$ (0.96)	$5.38e^{-6}$ (0.93)	$8.82e^{-6}$ (0.01)

TABLE 10 - CONTINUED

Inducer	Time (Days)	Incubation Medium pH 6 GW	pH 7 GW	0.1 × YEPG
	7	$9.9e^{-7}$ (0.96)	$2.48e^{-7}$ (0.98)	$1.75e^{-7}$ (0.80)
	14	$1.55e^{-6}$ (0.95)	$3.44e^{-7}$ (0.96)	$6.51e^{-8}$ (0.88)
	21	$1.56e^{-6}$ (0.91)	$7.74e^{-8}$ (0.98)	$1.7e^{-8}$ (0.37)
	28	$3.04e^{-6}$ (0.95)	$1.87e^{-7}$ (0.94)	$1.45e^{-7}$ (0.05)
	35	$4.52e^{-6}$ (0.92)	$6.98e^{-7}$ (0.95)	$9.33e^{-8}$ (0.09)

[a] The values refer to the slope of a linear curve fit for the light response observed within the 5-hour post-induction period. The r2 of the linear fit is given in parenthesis. *GW* groundwater; *YEPG* yeast extract/peptone/glucose medium; inducer solutions; *SS* simple solution, *CS* complex solution.

5.4.3 DISCUSSION

Observations made in this example supported evidence for a frequent response upon induction, measurable light emission and survival of the encapsulated *P. fluorescens* HK44 under nutrient-limiting conditions. In addition, the encapsulation process by itself proved sustainable for long-term biological activities. These features are critical in the design and application of a field biosensor using *P. fluorescens* HK44.

Among the simulated environmental conditions tested in this study, the cells distinctly preferred pH 6 and 7 groundwater for efficient induction and survivability. This reflected the potential limitation in the direct application of HK44 since they failed to respond in groundwater with pH below 6, either because of inhibition of the bioluminescence reaction or of cell viability or both. Interestingly, in many naturally bioluminescent bacteria the optimal pH for luciferase activity is reportedly slightly acidic (Danilov and Ismailov, 1989).

Concerns regarding the continuous effectiveness of the bacteria in a long-term biosensor application were cautiously addressed in this study. As observed, the bioluminescence reaction rate differed in magnitude and trend, in groundwater at pH 6 and pH 7 over the 35-day period. If a "cut-off" performance period can be derived for

each of the groundwater samples, the performance efficacy of the bacteria can be set for a definitive time frame, allowing replacement of the old encapsulated cells with new at the end of the time frame and rendering the biosensor capable of continuous operation. For instance, in the present study, a conservative cut-off period of 28 and 14 days might be set for pH 6 and 7 GW respectively on the basis of the response (Table 10, FIG. 29A and FIG. 29B).

Encapsulation proved supportive for this type of long-term application, as observed by others investigating the controlled introduction of bacterial into soil (Trevors *et al.*, 1993). However, there was no indication that it influenced substrate intake or the bioluminescence reaction on the basis of studies conducted with free cells. Other similar comparisons in *Pseudomonas* sp. also have revealed that immobilization has no generalized effect on the physiological activity (Shreve and Vogel, 1993).

5.5 EXAMPLE 5 -- IMMOBILIZATION AND ENCAPSULATION OF MICROBIAL CELLS ON ICs

The deposition of microbial organisms on ICs may be accomplished through the various protocols described below. The ultimate goal of these encapsulation methods is to provide the cells with a stable microenvironment limited from the stresses of their outer environment. Encapsulated cells can be formed into sheets or beads, almost of any thickness or diameter desired, depending on the method chosen. The small area available for cell deposition on an IC requires thin sheets (0.1-2 mm) or small diameter beads (< 50 μm) to be produced. However, the high sensitivity of the IC allows for a smaller cell mass to be used. For the procedures below a cell culture containing about 1×10^6 to about 1×10^8 cfu/ml is typically grown and an about 1 to about 5 g wet weight of these cells may be utilized in the encapsulation protocol.

5.5.1 AGAR/AGAROSE

Cells may be added to molten agar or agarose (of from about 1% to about 5%). Gelation occurs as the agar or agarose cools to room temperature (Kanasawud *et al.*, 1989).

5.5.2 CARRAGEENAN

A 2% solution of carrageenan may be warmed to about 70°C to about 80°C to initiate dissolution and then maintained at a temperature of from about 25°C to about 50°C. The cell culture also is warmed and added to the carrageenan solution. Gel formation occurs through the addition of cold 0.1 M potassium chloride (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996).

5.5.3 POLYACRYLAMIDE

Cells are mixed in a solution of acrylamide (35 g) and BIS (2.4 g). Ammonium persulfate (40 µl of a 0.40 g/ml solution) and TEMED (100 µl) are then added to initiate polymerization. Within 20 minutes sheets of encapsulated cells of any desired thickness can be sliced. Cell droplets may also be added through a syringe to the acrylamide solution to produce beads of encapsulated cells (of from about 1 mm to about 3 mm in diameter). Small diameter microbeads (of from about 2 µm to about 50 µm) may be produced by spraying the cell mixture through a nebulizer or vaporizer (Kanasawud *et al.*, 1989; Stormo and Crawford, 1992).

5.5.4 ALGINATE

Cells are added to an about 1% to about 8% solution of alginate. Addition of 0.5 M calcium chloride or 0.1 M strontium chloride initiates polymerization. Sheets, beads, or microbeads may be produced (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996).

5.5.5 POLYURETHANE/POLYCARBOMYL SULFONATE (PCS)

Polyurethane or PCS at a polymer content of 30-50% is mixed with a 1% calcium chloride solution. The pH is adjusted to approximately 6.5 and the cell mass is added. This mixture is sprayed into 0.75% calcium alginate and beads are formed.

After one hour the beads are removed, washed, and introduced into a 2% sodium tripolyphosphate buffer which dissolves the alginate layer leaving only a layer of polyurethane/PCS surrounding the cells (Vorlop *et al.*, 1992).

5.5.6 POLYVINYL ALCOHOL (PVA)

The cell suspension is mixed with a 13% PVA, 0.02% sodium alginate mixture. Upon contact with a solution of saturated boric acid and 2% calcium chloride, gelation occurs (Wu and Wisecarver, 1991).

5.5.7 SOL-GEL

The sol-gel process allows for the formation of silicon glass under room temperature conditions. Cells are combined with 0.1 M Tris-Cl and tetramethylorthosilicate (TMOS), tetraethylorthosilicate (TEOS), methyltrimethoxysilane (MTMS), ethyltrimethoxysilane (ETMS), propyltrimethoxysilane (PTMS), or polydimethylsiloxane (PDMS). Solidification times vary depending on the concentrations used (of from about 0.02% to about 0.5%). Sheets, beads, or microbeads can be produced (Armon *et al.*, 1996).

5.5.8 COMBINATION OF PROCEDURES

Many of the above methods can be combined. For example, cells can first be encapsulated in alginate, carrageenan, agar, or agarose and then encapsulated again in a stronger layer of PCS, PVA, or sol-gel. Layers of encapsulation can also be produced; alginate microbeads can be 'sandwiched' between layers of sol-gel. This provides the cell with a greater degree of protection than a single layer alone and allows the outer layer to be more compatible with the IC while maintaining an inner layer more compatible with the cells.

5.5.9 AMENDMENTS

Various amendments can be added during the encapsulation process to aid in cell survival. These include oxygen carriers such as polydimethylsiloxane (Leonhardt *et al.*, 1985); nutrient sources such as powdered skim milk (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996);

moisture reservoirs such as clay particles (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996); and compounds to improve strength and flexibility, such as bean gum (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996).

5.6 EXAMPLE 6 – TOXICITY APPLICATIONS OF BIOLUMINESCENCE

A number of assays have been developed that allow the measurement of toxicity of a given compound or compounds based on the effect of the compound or compounds on bioluminescent bacteria. Basically, toxicity is indicated by a decrease in the bioluminescent signal of the test bacteria. Commercially available assays include the Microtox and the Lumitox systems. These assay systems utilize bacteria that are naturally bioluminescent. Examples of applications of toxicity assays using bioluminescent bacteria are given in Table 11, including the type of organism used and the name of the assay, if commercially available.

5.7 EXAMPLE 7 -- BIOLUMINESCENT GENOTOXICITY ASSAYS

Recently, a number of assays utilizing bioluminescent bacteria have been developed to determine whether a compound is a mutagen or whether a mutagenic compound has contacted the bacteria. The assays are based on the ability of a suspected mutagen to cause distinct changes in the bacterial DNA allowing bioluminescence or the response of cells to damaged DNA caused by the mutagen. Examples of applications of bioluminescent genotoxicity assays are given in Table 12, including the type of organism and bioluminescence genes used.

5.8 EXAMPLE 8 – METHODS OF SCREENING ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

Organisms that are naturally bioluminescent or that have been engineered to be bioluminescent may be used to screen compounds for their ability to affect the viability of the organism. Basically, in these assays, bioluminescence will be inversely proportional to biocidal activity. Examples of applications of bioluminescent antimicrobial screening assays are given in Table 13, including the type of organism used and bioluminescence genes (if applicable).

TABLE 11

TOXICITY APPLICATIONS OF BIOLUMINESCENCE

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	ASSAY	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. phosphoreum	N.A.[1]	Microtox	System may be used to screen whether or not tributenyltin compounds were less toxic than tributyltin compounds as an antifouling agent.	Dooley and Testa, 1989
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	System may be used to determine whether or not pesticides in the soil were more or less toxic than the products of their degradation.	Somasudaram *et al.*, 1990
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the distribution of pollution in the sediment interstitial waters of the Detroit River.	Giesy *et al.*, 1988
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of breakdown products from phenolic compounds as they apply to waste water treatment.	Heck *et al.*, 1992

TABLE 11 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	ASSAY	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of Trinitrotoluene, Diaminotoluene, and Dinitromethylaniline mixtures.	Hankenson and Schaeffer, 1991
P. phosphoreum		Lumitox	Assay may be used to examine the discharges into the River Tormes in Salmanca Spain and correlate the decrease in bioluminescence to the impact on the river.	Fernandez *et al.*, 1995
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to examine the usefulness of bioluminescence to detect cyanobacterial blooms and the associated hepatotoxins (microcystins).	Lawton *et al.*, 1990
V. harveyi		NA	Assay may be used to detect biohazardous chemicals in soil and water extractions with and without acid..	Thomulka and Lange, 1995

TABLE 11 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	ASSAY	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
V. harveyi		NA[1]	Assay may be used to evaluate combined or mixture toxicity of two organic compounds, nitrobenzene and trinitrobenzene.	Thomulka and Lange, 1997
V. fischeri		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the impact of point and nonpoint pollution on pore waters of two Chesapeake Bay tributaries.	Karuppiah and Gupta, 1997
V. fischeri		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the effect of river and wetland sediments on the toxicity of metolachlor.	Karuppiah *et al.*, 1997
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine petroleum hydrocarbon toxicity.	Eisman *et al.*, 1991

TABLE 11 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	ASSAY	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the efficacy of ultrafiltration for removal of organics from groundwater.	Middaugh *et al.*, 1991
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to test the toxicity of marine surfactants.	Poremba *et al.*, 1991
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the acute toxicity of *Euphorbia splendens* latex.	Schall *et al.*, 1991
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	System may be used to test for the presence of paralytic shellfish poison-like neurotoxins in a "red tide" bloom of *Gonyaulax polyedra*.	Bruno *et al.*, 1990
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of thio- and alkylphenols causing flavor tainting of fish from the upper Wisconsin River.	Heil and Lindsay, 1989

TABLE 11 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	ASSAY	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to test the toxicity of ozonolysis by-products in drinking water	Chou and Que Hee, 1992
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine biological effects of certain metals and organic compounds found in wood preservatives.	Wendt *et al.*, 1996
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of 4-chloro-2-methylphenoxyacetic acid	Vismara *et al.*, 1996
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of water samples and extracts from the Sora river area.	Filipic, 1995
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of Lake Orta (Northern Italy) sediments.	Guzzella *et al.*, 1996

TABLE 11 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	ASSAY	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the lethal effects of azulene and longifolene.	Sweet and Meier, 1997
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to determine the toxicity of granular activated carbon treated coal gasification water.	Makino *et al.*, 1986
P. phosphoreum		Microtox	Assay may be used to assess copper complexation with organic compounds.	Morel *et al.*, 1988

[1]NA, not applicable.

TABLE 12
GENOTOXICITY ASSAYS

TEST ORGANISM	LUX GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
Photobacterium phosphoreum (dark variant)	NA[1]	A dark variant of *P. phosphoreum* is marketed from Microbic Corporation under the name Mutatox. This system monitors genotoxicity by exposing the bacteria to the suspected mutagen and if reversion to bioluminescence occurs it suggests the compound is a possible mutagen.	Sun and Stahr, 1992
E. coli	Firefly luciferase inserted into phage λ to express the luciferase in the prophage form	Phage λ is integrated into the chromosome of *E. coli* forming a lysogenic strain. Since mutagens have the ability to induce prophage λ bioluminescence would indicate the presence of a suspected mutagen. Since this assay uses the luciferase only luciferin has to be added exogenously.	Lee *et al.*, 1992
E. coli	*luxAB* of *V. fischerii* inserted into phage λ to express the luciferase in the prophase form	Assay is the same as above except the substrate for the luciferase is n-decanal.	Maillard *et al.*, 1996

[1]NA, not applicable.

TABLE 13

SCREENING ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
Mycobacterium tuberculosis	Firefly luciferase cloned in front of heat shock promoter on the shuttle vector pMV261	Strain used to ascertain the effectiveness of various antimicrobial agents. Assay is performed *in vitro* as the cells were lysed and the luciferin substrate added. However, luciferin can be added to whole cells.	Cooksey *et al.*, 1993
Mycobacterium smegmatis	*luxAB* from *V. harveyi* cloned in front of heat shock promoter in the shuttle vector pMV261	Strain used as a rapid way to screen for effectiveness of antimicrobial agents. Assay uses whole cells, but requires the addition of the aldehyde substrate.	Andrew and Roberts, 1993
Listeria monocytogenes	*luxAB* from *V. fischerii* cloned in an expression plasmid	Assay used to evaluate the effectiveness of peroxygen disinfectant as a biocide for the intracellular pathogen *L. monocytogenes*.	Walker *et al.*, 1992

TABLE 13 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	LUX GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
Listeria monocytogenes	*luxAB* from *V. fischerii* cloned in an expression plasmid	Assay used to examine the biocidal effect of phenol and chlorohexidine on the intracellular pathogen *L. monocytogenes*.	Walker *et al.*, 1992
Photobacterium phosphoreum	NA[1]	Assay used to ascertain the effectiveness of using acoustic energy and cavitation on bacteria by examining bioluminescent levels while varying acoustic pressures and duration. One application is the inhibition of colonization of the oral cavity.	McInnes *et al.*, 1990
E. coli and *B. subtilis*	luciferase gene from *pyrophorus plagiophthalamus*	Assay may be used to determine the membranolytic activity of serum complement.	Virta *et al.*, 1997

[1]NA, not applicable.

5.9 EXAMPLE 9 – POLLUTION DETECTION USING BIOLUMINESCENCE ASSAYS

Common features of microbial metabolism include the ability to recognize a compound in the environment, turn on the expression of genes required to utilize the metabolite, and, subsequently, turn off these genes when the metabolite is no longer present. the classic example is the *lac* operon. The *lac* operon promoter is repressed in the presence of simple sugars or the absence of lactose. However, when simple sugars are not available and lactose is present, the *lac* operon is highly expressed. When the level of simple sugars is sufficient or the lactose is depleted, the *lac* operon again is repressed.

Microorganisms have the ability to metabolize a wide variety of compounds. Some bacteria are able to metabolize compounds that are toxic to humans and are considered pollutants. Expression of the genes that enable pollutant metabolism is similar to that of the *lac* operon. Certain bacteria can recognize the presence of the pollutant in the environment, turn on the genes required for metabolism of the pollutant, and repress the genes when the pollutant is no longer present. By operatively linking a gene or genes that provide bioluminescence to a promoter of a pollutant metabolism gene or operon, one may detect the microorganism's response to the presence of the pollutant. Several examples of such a utility are given in Table 14, including the organism, *lux* genes, and the promoter to which the *lux* genes are operatively linked.

5.10 EXAMPLE 10 – BIOLUMINESCENT OXYGEN SENSORS

The ability of *Photobacterium* to emit light in response to molecular oxygen has been used to monitor low dissolved oxygen concentrations (Lloyd *et al.,* 1981). Other examples are given in Table 15.

TABLE 14

POLLUTANT DETECTION: AROMATIC COMPOUNDS AND STRESS INDICATORS

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. fluorescens HK44	*nah-luxCDABE* (*V. fischerii*)	Strain able to semiquantitatively determine naphthalene concentrations. Also used in an on-line optical biosensor to determine the presence of naphthalene in water flowing past the sensor.	King *et al.*, 1990 Heitzer *et al.*, 1992; 1994
P. putida B2	*tod* promoter cloned in front of promoterless lux genes of pUCD615	Strain detects toluene in water samples as well as the water soluble components of JP4 jet fuel. Strain used in the on-line monitoring of TCE degradation in a differential volume bioreactor.	Applegate *et al.*, 1997
E. coli	two heat shock promoters *dnaK* and *grpE* were fused to *V. fischerii luxCDABE* pUCD615	Strains treated with a variety of environmental insults including ethanol and pentachlorophenol; showed an increase in bioluminescence correlating with the induction of the heat shock response.	VanDyk *et al.*, 1994

TABLE 14 - CONTINUED

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
E. coli	heat shock promoter *grpE* fused to the *V. fischerii luxCDABE* pUCD615.	*E. coli* strain harboring *grpE-lux* fusion assayed for its use in a miniature bioreactor to act as an Early Warning System for the detection of toxic levels of pollutants in the influent of a waste water biotreatment plant.	Gu *et al.*, 1996
E. coli	mercury resistance operon fused to promoterless *V. fischerii luxCDABE*	Biosensor for the semiquantitiativedetection of bioavailable inorganic mercury in contaminated waters.	Selifonova *et al.*, 1993
E. coli	lux operon from *Photorhabdus luminescens* fused to the nitrate reductase (*narG*) promoter	Assay may be used to detect the presence of nitrate.	Prest *et al., 1997*

[1]N.A. = Not applicable

5.11 EXAMPLE 11 – BIOLUMINESCENCE IN EUKARYOTIC REPORTERS

The luciferase and green fluorescent proteins have been used extensively as reporter genes in Eukaryotic systems. Examples of the use of luciferase genes in mammalian cell lines are given in Table 16, including the name of the cell line used, promoter and bioluminescence gene used, and a brief description of the application.

5.12 EXAMPLE 12 – MEASUREMENT OF A BIOLUMINESCENT SIGNAL BY AN OASIC

Pseudomonas fluorescens HK44 generate blue-green light when exposed to naphthalene or salicylate. The genes for bioluminescence are located in a plasmid that carries a transcriptional fusion between the promoter of a salicylate hydroxylase gene, *nahG*, of a naphthalene-degradation pathway and a promoterless *luxCDABE* gene cassette of *Vibrio fisheri* (King *et al.*, 1990). The promoterless *lux* operon and activity are described elsewhere (Shaw *et al.*, 1988).

A microscope slide with a culture of *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44 was placed over an OASIC. The resulting device was exposed to naphthalene and the output voltage was measured over time (FIG. 2).

TABLE 15

OXYGEN SENSORS

TEST ORGANISM	*LUX* GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
P. phosphoreum	N.A.[1]	*P. phosphoreum* is used in this assay as sensor for bacterial oxygen demand (BOD). BOD is determined by the increase in bioluminescence. As the organic molecules in the test water are metabolized reduced products are shunted to the bioluminescence reactions causing an increase in bioluminescence.	Hyun *et al.*, 1993
P. phosphoreum	N.A.[1]	*P. phosphoreum* is used in this assay as an on-line controller of oxygen concentration. The bacterial oxygen sensor was used to control the optimal dissolved oxygen concentration to produce maximum C_2H_2 reducing activity in *Klebsiella pneumoniae*.	Kavanagh and Hill, 1990

[1]N.A.= Not applicable

TABLE 16

EUKARYOTIC REPORTERS

TEST CELLS	*LUX* GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
human liver cancer cell line	CYP1A1-*luc* (firefly) gene fusion	A construct engineered such that when a toxic compound which would elicit a P450 response it expresses the firefly luciferase instead. The present method involves the lysis of the cells as well as the addition of exogenous luciferin to measure activity however a whole cell assay may be developed.	Anderson *et al.*, 1995
human hepatoma cell line Hep3B	*epo* promoter sequence fused to *luc*	bioluminescence used to monitor the induction of the erythropoiten gene. Hypoxia found to cause a 4-fold induction of gene expression in Hep3B.	Gupta and Goldwasser, 1996
HeLa cells	luciferase was fused to a thymidine kinase promoter	HeLa cells cotransfected with the expression vector HEG0 and the luciferase reporter plasmid harboring a Vit. A2 ERE. Antiestrogens designed and tested and found to inhibit transcriptional activity.	Biberger and Von-Angerer, 1996

TABLE 16 - CONTINUED

TEST CELLS	*LUX* GENES	APPLICATION	REFERENCE
mouse fibroblast 3T3 cells	ribonucleotide reductase promoters for both subunits R1 and R2 fused with luciferase	Reporter constructs utilizing the R1 and R2 promoter-luciferase constructs transformed into mouse fibroblast cells. R1 *luc* shows a 3-fold induction and R2 *luc* a 10-fold increase upon exposure to UV light in a dose dependent manner.	Filatov *et al.*, 1996
estrogen receptor-positive breast cancer cell line	reporter plasmid contains a thymidine kinase promoter fused to a firefly luciferase	luciferase reporter used to screen for both estrogenicity and antiestrogenicity	Pons *et al.*, 1990
Hela cells	firefly luciferase controlled by the Gal-4 promoter	Chimeric proteins comprising the DNA binding domain of Gal4 yeast proteins and hormone binding domains of various steroid receptors are placed into the cell lines containing the Gal-4-luciferase construct to test the biological activities of steroid hormones.	Jausons-Loffreda *et al.*, 1994

5.13 EXAMPLE 13 -- BBICs FORM NOVEL WHOLE-CELL BIOSENSORS

The BBIC represents a new advance in the development of whole-cell biosensors, consisting of a genetically engineered bioreporter organism interfaced with an IC. The bioreporter is engineered to luminesce when a targeted substance is encountered, with the circuit being designed to detect this luminescence, process the signal and communicate the results. The bioreporters are thus available to the circuit designer as another component, analogous to a transistor or a resistor, albeit a living entity.

Biosensors are hybrid devices combining a biological sensing component with an analytical measuring element. The biological component typically reacts and/or interacts with an analyte of interest to produce a response that can be quantified by an electronic, optical or mechanical transducer. The most common configuration uses immobilized macromolecules such as enzymes or antibodies as the biological component; another, less common, approach uses living microorganisms or sections of organs or tissues as the biological element. Originally, these biosensors, sometimes referred to as whole-cell biosensors (Bousse, 1996) used electrochemical transducers to detect the activity of growing cells (Buerk, 1993). Whole-cell biosensors have functioned in controlled environments but were not widely applicable, largely because of interferences caused by growth on nutrients other than the target analyte.

Alternatively, molecular-biological techniques have been used to produce cells or bioreporter strains that have much greater selectivity. Typically, DNA sequences that code for a specific promoter sequence are fused with gene(s) coding for reporter enzyme(s) and introduced into a host cell. When the analyte is present, the reporter genes are expressed to produce the enzyme(s) responsible for the production of the measured signal. Thus, gene regulation (rather than the consequences of microbial growth) provides the selectivity.

Commonly used reporter enzymes include β-galactosidase, encoded by the gene *lacZ*, and catechol-2,3-dioxygenase, encoded by the gene *xylE*. Both of these systems use calorimetric detection methods, requiring cell destruction to produce a signal. In the past decade, bioluminescent bioreporters have become popular, because the bioluminescent response is easily detected and the assay need not be destructive to

the cells. Thus, the bioreporter can be continuously monitored in real time. Genetically engineered bioluminescent bioreporters using both eukaryotic and prokaryotic bioluminescence enzymes have been developed for detecting toxins and pollutants in water and soil, and to assess the bioavailability and functional processes of pollutant biodegradation.

Bioreporter bioluminescence has been detected by a number of different types of optical transducer, including photomultiplier tubes, photodiodes, microchannel plates, photographic films and charge-coupled devices. In many of these applications, light is collected and transferred to the transducer using lenses, fibre-optic cables or liquid light guides. However, applications requiring small volumes, remote detection or multiple parallel sensing require a new type of instrumentation that is small and portable, yet maintains a high degree of sensitivity.

The bioluminescent-bioreporter IC (BBIC) biosensor described in the present invention represents a novel approach that eliminates the need for transfer devices and large-scale detection equipment couples the bioluminescent bioreporter directly to an IC designed specifically for the task of detecting, processing and reporting low levels of bioluminescence. The biosensor may be inexpensively engineered to provide information on environmental, medical, pharmaceutical and industrial samples.

5.13.1 BBIC

Whole-cell bioreporters engineered to bioluminesce in the presence of a particular substance are placed on an IC designed to detect light, process this signal and then report the results. In this situation, the bioreporters can be thought of as another component (analogous to a transistor, resistor or capacitor) available to the IC designer. The chief advantage of this approach is that the entire sensor, including all signal-processing and communication functions, can be produced as a single-chip, low-power, rugged, inexpensive device. Other transducers only detect the light and require other components to make a complete system, but the IC provides the analogue, digital and radio-frequency (RF) circuit capabilities required to make a complete stand-alone sensor. Additionally, as there are inexpensive, IC-fabrication facilities, BBICs can be individually crafted to fit particular applications. Thus, a

feature such as global-position sensing (GPS) could be included in a BBIC designed for a distributed sensing application.

The successful development of a BBIC requires a bioreporter engineered to be sensitive to the targeted substance, an immobilization and/or encapsulation procedure for adhering the bioreporter to the IC, a bioresistant and biocompatible IC coating, and an IC designed to perform the desired functions.

5.13.2 BIOLUMINESCENT BIOREPORTERS

Microorganisms exist in such diverse environments as deep-sea hydrothermal vents, subzero arctic seawaters, hypersaline solutions, water saturated with organic solvents, contaminated soils and industrial wastes. The ability of organisms to survive in such harsh environments is related to their capacity to sense and adjust to changing environmental conditions. Thus, for the successful development of a bioreporter strain, one must first select an organism that can readily persist in the environment under study. Secondly, the organism must have the proper gene-regulation systems or be capable of receiving such systems through genetic-engineering techniques. Third, the bioluminescent genes must be integrated into the organism's genetic system without adversely affecting essential cellular functions. Micro-organisms are excellent candidates because they are present in almost all types of environments, are fairly easy to manipulate genetically and have a diverse set of gene-regulation systems.

Many species of insect, fish, squid, gelatinous sea animal, fungus, dinoflagellate, protozoan and bacterium have the ability to produce light. Although the molecular biology of bioluminescence has evolved along a number of different pathways, the most common bioluminescent system utilizes a luciferase enzyme to oxidize a substrate termed a luciferin. The reaction usually requires molecular oxygen.

In prokaryotes, the genetic system, designated *lux*, consists of a luciferase composed of two different subunits, encoded by the genes *luxA* and *luxB*, that oxidize a long-chain fatty aldehyde to the corresponding fatty acid, resulting in blue-green light emission near 490 nm (Tu and Mager, 1995; Meighen, 1991; O'Kane and

Prasher, 1992). The system also contains a multi-enzyme fatty-acid reductase consisting of three proteins (a reductase encoded by *luxC*, a transferase encoded by *luxD* and a synthetase encoded by *luxE*), which initially converts and then recycles the fatty acid to the aldehyde substrate. The genes are contained on a single operon, denoted *luxCDABE*. This genetic configuration enables the complete *lux*-gene cassette to be inserted as reporter genes downstream from different promoters to allow the utilization of bioluminescence to monitor gene expression. Bioreporters containing the *luxAB* genes alone have also been used to monitor gene expression (Chatterjee and Meighen, 1995; Hill and Stewart, 1994) but, as the multienzyme fatty-acid reductase is not present, an aldehyde substrate (typically *n*-decanal) has to be added exogenously to determine bioluminescence (*i.e.* enzyme activity).

Eukaryotic luciferase genes have also been cloned and used in bacteria as reporter genes, primarily the firefly luciferase (*luc*), which produces light near 560 nm, and the click-beetle luciferase (*lucOR*), which produces light near 595 nm (Cebolla *et al.*, 1995; Hastings, 1996). A multiplexed system using both the click-beetle and the firefly system within a single cell has been proposed (Wood and Gruber, 1996): theoretically, one enzyme producing one color of light would be placed under the control of the promoter, with the other being unregulated or constitutively switched on and used as a control signal to correct for nonspecific physiological changes, fluctuations in the concentrations of bioluminescent cells and changes in environmental parameters.

Implicit in the use of a bioreporter strain for a BBIC is the assumption that the bioluminescent signal generated is directly related to the concentration of the target substance, most desirably in a selective and quantitative manner. In general, the *lux* reporter genes are placed under the regulatory control of inducible operons maintained in native plasmids, broad-host-range plasmids or chromosomally integrated into the host strain. In these genetic systems, the target analyte or its degradation products act as the inducer of the bioluminescence genes and are responsible for selectivity and the resultant response. For example, *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44 is a bioreporter that produces light in the presence of naphthalene. This strain has two genetic operons positively regulated by NahR, a LysR-type protein. One of the operons contains the

lux bioluminescence genes and the other the genes responsible for the degradation of naphthalene to salicylate, the metabolic intermediate of naphthalene degradation. Both operons are induced when salicylate interacts with the regulatory protein NahR. Therefore, exposure of HK44 to either naphthalene or salicylate results in increased gene expression and increased bioluminescence. Studies in continuous cultures of *P. fluorescens* HK44 have demonstrated that the magnitude of the bioluminescence response correlated with the aqueous-phase concentration of naphthalene under pulsed-perturbation conditions (King *et al.*, 1990). A bioluminescent assay has been developed for the assessment of naphthalene (or salicylate, if present) bioavailability (Heitzer *et al.*, 1992). Using growing-cell cultures, a linear relationship to bioluminescence was found for both naphthalene and salicylate [correlation coefficient (r^2) of 0.990 for naphthalene and 0.991 for salicylate] over a concentration range of two orders of magnitude. Reproducible bioluminescence was observed not only in aqueous naphthalene samples but also in soil-slurry samples spiked with naphthalene, complex soil leachates and the water-soluble components of jet fuel (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994) *P. fluorescens* HK44 can be applied in environmental use either for the quantitative analysis of contaminant presence or for bioavailability measurements. However, for such applications, both the chemical complexity of the environment and the physiological conditions of the organisms must be considered in interpreting the bioluminescence response. Many types of bioluminescent (*lux*) transcriptional gene fusions have been used to develop light-emitting-bioreporter bacterial strains to sense the presence, bioavailability and biodegradation of other pollutants including toluene (Applegate *et al.*, 1997) and isopropylbenzene (Selifonova and Eaton, 1996). Analogous genetic approaches have also been reported for inducible heavy-metal-detoxification and -resistance systems (including mercury (Selifonova *et al.*, 1993)), and response to heat-shock (Van Dyk *et al.*, 1994) and oxidative stresses. In addition, genetically engineered Gram-positive bioreporters have been used to examine the efficacy of antimicrobial agents (decreased light equates to greater efficacy) (Andrew and Roberts, 1993; Cooksey *et al.*, 1993). Eukaryotic bioreporters have also been generated to detect toxic compounds (Anderson *et al.*, 1995; Gupta and Goldwasser, 1996), oxygen (Filatov *et al.*, 1996),

ultraviolet light (Biberger and Angerer, 1996) and oestrogenic and antioestrogenic compounds (Pons *et al.*, 1990). Environmental applications involving bioluminescence measurements have been reviewed (Steinberg and Poziomek, 1995).

5.13.3 BIOREPORTER ENTRAPMENT

Various methods exist for the entrapment of microbial cells at or near the light-sensing portion of the IC. For instance, cells can simply be entrapped behind a porous membrane or encapsulated in natural or synthetic polymers (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996). Polymeric matrices can provide a hydrated environment containing the nutrients and cofactors needed for cellular activity and growth. In addition, encapsulated cells are protected from toxic substances in their environment and maintain increased plasmid stability (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996). Cells can be encapsulated in thin films or small-diameter beads in order to be adaptable to the small surface area available on the IC. Thin films can be formed by mixing cells in a liquid polymer that is then micropipetted onto the IC in a thin layer and allowed to polymerize; larger blocks of cells can also be made, from which films of virtually any desired thickness can be sliced and attached to the IC. Microbeads are produced by spraying the liquid-polymer-cell mixture through a nebulizer into a polymerizing agent. The following encapsulation protocols show the usefulness of IC applications.

- Agar/agarose: cells can be added to molten agar or agarose (1-5%). Gelation occurs as the agar or agarose cools to room temperature (Kanasawud *et al.*, 1989).
- Carrageenan: a 2% solution of carrageenan is warmed to 70-80°C to initiate dissolution and then maintained at 35-50°C. The cell culture is also warmed and added to the carrageenan solution. Gel formation occurs through the addition of cold 0.1 M potassium chloride (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996).
- Alginate: cells are added to a 1-8% solution of alginate; addition of 0.5 M calcium chloride or 0.1 M strontium chloride causes polymerization (Cassidy *et al.*, 1996). The bioluminescent bioreporter

P. fluorescens HK44 has been immobilized on the end of liquid light guides using this method (Heitzer *et al.*, 1994).

- Polyurethane-polycarbomyl sulfonate (PCS): polyurethane or PCS at a polymer content of 30-50% is mixed with a 1% calcium-chloride solution, the pH is adjusted to approximately 6.5 and the cell mass is added. This mixture is sprayed into 0.75% calcium alginate, resulting in bead formation. After one hour, the beads are removed, washed and introduced into a 2% sodium-tripolyphosphate buffer, which dissolves the alginate layer leaving only a layer of polyurethane-PCS surrounding the cells (Kanasawud *et al.*, 1989).
- Polyacrylamide: cells are mixed in a solution of acrylamide and bisacrylamide. Ammonium per-sulfate and N,N,N′,N′-tetramethyl-ethylenediamine (TEMED) are then added to initiate polymerization (Vorlop *et al.*, 1992).
- Polyvinyl alcohol: the cell suspension is mixed with a 13% polyvinyl alcohol, 0.02% sodium-alginate mixture. Gelation occurs on contact with a solution of saturated boric acid and 2% calcium chloride (Wu and Wisecarver, 1991).
- Sol-gel: cells are combined with 0.1 M Tris-Cl and tetramethylorthosilicate, tetraethoxysilane, methyltrimethoxysilane, ethyltrimethoxysilane, propyltrimeth-oxysilane or polydimethyl-siloxane. Solidification times vary depending on the concentrations used (Rietti-Shati *et al.*, 1996).

5.13.4 INTEGRATED CIRCUIT

The IC contains the devices and circuits to: (1) detect the optical signal; (2) distinguish this signal from noise; (3) perform analogue or digital signal processing (*e.g.* compare to alarm thresholds); (4) communicate results; and (5) perform auxiliary functions (*e.g.* position sensing, temperature measurement). Fortunately, these functions can all be performed in complementary-metal-oxide-semiconductor (CMOS) IC processes. As the semiconductor-industry workhorse,

CMOS brings a great deal of flexibility and utility to BBICs. Although CMOS was first employed for digital electronics, high-quality analogue circuits are now routinely produced using CMOS processes. In addition, it has recently been demonstrated that CMOS has a great deal of potential for electro-optical detection (Simpson *et al.*, 1997). Finally, small-geometry and silicon-on-insulator CMOS processes allow the integration of RF communication and position-sensing circuits on the same IC as analogue, digital and electro-optical detection circuits. In combination with the BBIC, this functionality represents a significant breakthrough in the development of true "laboratory-instruments-on-a-chip" devices.

In its most basic form, a BBIC measures the amount of light emitted by the bioreporter, digitizes this value and transmits the results to a data receiver. The minimum detectable signal is a function of the quantum efficiency (η), the leakage current, the noise of the photodetector and the noise and filtering characteristics of the signal-conditioning circuit. Unlike photomultiplier tubes, silicon photodetectors cannot count single photons. However, as bioluminescence is typically a long-lived phenomenon, long integration times can be used to detect low light levels. In the limit, the minimum detectable signal (*MDS*), measured in photons, approaches the limit in the following equation:

$$MDS = \frac{1}{q\eta}\sqrt{\frac{4qA_{PD}I_s}{T_{int}}} \qquad (30)$$

where q is the electronic charge, A_{PD} is the area of the photodiode, T_{int} is the integration time and I_s is the photodiode saturation current, which is strongly process dependent. This equation only holds if the dark current of the photodiode is zero (*i.e.* the bias on the photodiode is zero) and the noise of the subsequent signal-processing circuitry can be made negligible compared with the photodiode noise.

As this equation shows, *MDS* is minimized by maximizing η and T_{int} and minimizing I_s and A_{PD}. However, T_{int} may be constrained by the amount of time available to make the measurement and a small A_{PD} leads to a poorer light-collection efficiency unless the bioreporters can be concentrated over a small area of the IC. However, I_s does depend partially on the surface properties, and so the IC protective-

coating deposition and annealing process may be optimized to minimize I_s. Also, if a thin-film IC protective coating is chemically and biologically rugged enough, it could form an antireflective coating for the photodetector, helping to maximize η.

The full utility of CMOS is realized after the light is detected. CMOS analogue signal-conditioning circuits include voltage amplifiers, transimpedance amplifiers, charge-sensitive amplifiers and current-to-frequency converters, and the signal-processing choices include analogue filtering, digital filtering, neural-network processing and alarm discrimination. BBICs could be connected to a central data-collection center, or even to each other, through a wireless network. A host of auxiliary functions, including other environmental-sensing (*e.g.* temperature measurement), time stamping or position sensing can be implemented on the IC as required by the application.

5.13.5 PROTECTIVE COATING

Amorphous silicon dioxide (SiO_2) is commonly used as a dielectric for ICs. Unfortunately, SiO_2 is susceptible to attack by various chemical and biological materials, making it unsuitable as a protective coating in biosensor applications. However, amorphous silicon nitride (SiN) films are generally more resistant to impurity diffusion, and certain forms of SiN are more resistant to attack by chemical and biological materials. These features make SiN a promising material for BBIC applications. The optical properties of SiN are also attractive for photosensitive devices operating in the visible region: depending on the deposition conditions, the refractive index of amorphous SiN at 633 nm varies between 2.0 and 3.5, which makes it ideal as a single-layer antireflective coating for silicon photodetectors. Using hydrogenated SiN films as the antireflection coating for Si photodetectors has the further advantage that annealing the films releases some hydrogen, which then diffuses to the interface to tie up 'dangling' bonds at the silicon surface (Kishore *et al.*, 1992), thereby improving the response of the photodetectors to blue light.

Most SiN is made using plasma-enhanced chemical-vapour deposition (PE-CVD), in which an RF energy source is used to ionize one or more of the source gases before film growth. This growth technique requires relatively low substrate

temperatures (approximately 300°C) to get high-quality optical films, but the film properties are highly dependent on the source-gas pressures and the geometry of the growth chamber. It has been recently shown that thick layers (approximately 500 nm) of amorphous SiN deposited using PE-CVD can form IC-compatible, bioresistant, biocompatible coatings. Although PE-CVD-grown SiN has many favorable properties, run-to-run differences in film parameters (such as refractive index and film thicknesses) of 10-20% are common, even when the other film-growth parameters are nominally the same.

Recently, SiN films have been successfully deposited on silicon at room temperature using a novel continuous jet vapour deposition JVD) technique (Wang *et al.*, 1995; Malik *et al.*, 1996). However, this produces very high gas loads, which are not compatible with the complex vacuum systems used on IC-fabrication lines. Moreover, it is difficult to control the film thickness using this technique.

A thin-film growth technique known as molecularjet CVD (MJ-CVD) has been developed (Res and Lowndes, 1992). This technique involves passing the source gas through a small orifice, thereby increasing its velocity at the film-growth surface. The orifice can be opened and closed rapidly (approximately 20 ms), making it possible to expose the surface and the rest of the growth environment to source gas for a very short period of time. The pulsedjet technique has all the intrinsic advantages of supersonic-free jet film growth and is capable of growing thin films in a layer-by-layer fashion while simultaneously reducing the gas load.

5.13.6 RESULTS

A BBIC was constructed by placing the toluene-sensitive bioreporter *Pseudomonas putida* TVA8 on an OASIC. FIG. 36A, FIG. 36B and FIG. 36C show an illustrative sensor and enclosure, and FIG. 37 shows an illustration of the OASIC, which used a diode that normally forms a transistor junction to make the photodiode. The front-end signal-conditioning circuit produced an output pulse train whose frequency was directly proportional to the photodiode current. A digital signal proportional to the sum of the leakage and the photocurrent was generated by counting pulses for a specified time (the integration time). When compared with

conventional electrometer circuits, this BBIC front-end signal-conditioning circuit provided lower noise (no resistor in the feedback path), a faster recovery from overloads (no high time constants) and a larger dynamic range. The entire OASIC measured 2.2 × 2.2 mm and was lubricated in a standard 1.2-μm *n*-well CMOS IC process.

When no luminescence was produced by the cells, multiple measurements were taken with an integration time of 1 min. The leakage current produced a signal of approximately six counts per minute (cpm) [with a standard deviation (σ) of 0.22 cpm]; as expected, the standard deviation decreased with the square root of the integration time. Longer integration times were produced off line by summing 1-min measurements.

Bioluminescence was induced in the BBIC cells and a control sample by exposure to toluene vapour. From the control-sample measurements, the inventors estimate that the toluene concentration was no more than 1 ppm [a signal of 12 cpm (6 cpm above background) was measured]. From previous measurements, *P. putida* TVA8 is known to have a linear response to toluene concentration until saturation, when the concentration reaches a level of approximately 10 ppm (Selifonova and Eaton, 1996). Assuming that a minimum detectable signal is 2σ above background, then the minimum detectable concentration (*MDC*) of toluene for this BBIC [in parts per billion (ppb)] is given by the following equation:

$$MDC = \frac{20{,}000\sigma}{\sqrt{T_{int} S_{sat}}} \tag{31}$$

where S_{sat} is the signal in cpm at a concentration of 10 ppm and T_{int} is the integration time in minutes. The minimum detectable toluene concentration for this BBIC as a function of integration time is shown in FIG. 38.

6.0 REFERENCES

The following references, to the extent that they provide exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

U. S. Patent 4,237,224, issued Dec. 2, 1980.

U. S. Patent 4,332,898, issued Jun. 1, 1982.

U. S. Patent 4,342,832, issued Aug. 3, 1982.

U. S. Patent 4,356,270, issued Oct. 26, 1982.

U. S. Patent 4,362,817, issued Dec. 7, 1982.

U. S. Patent 4,371,625, issued Feb. 1, 1983.

U. S. Patent 4,554,101, issued Nov. 19, 1985.

U. S. Patent 4,683,195, issued Jul. 28, 1987.

U. S. Patent 4,683,202, issued Jul. 28, 1987.

U. S. Patent 4,800,159, issued Jan. 24, 1989.

U. S. Patent 4,883,750, issued Nov. 28, 1989.

U. S. Patent 4,965,188, issued Oct. 23, 1990.

U. S. Patent 5,176,995, issued Jan. 5, 1993.

U. S. Patent 5,441,884, issued Aug. 15, 1995.

Eur. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. 320,308.

Eur. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. 329,822.

Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. PCT/US87/00880.

Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. PCT/US89/01025.

Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. WO 88/10315.

Intl. Pat. Appl. Publ. No. WO 89/06700.

Great Britain Pat. Appl. No. 2202328.

"Enzyme Nomenclature 1978", *Recommendations of the Nomenclature Committee of the International Union of Biochemistry*, Academic Press, New York, 1979.

"Poisons and Poisoning," *The New Encyclopaedia Britannica*, 15th Ed, Vol 25, pp. 895-910, 1985.

Ahluwalia, De Rossi, Ristori, Schirone, Serra, "A comparative study of protein immobilization techniques for optical immunosensors," *Biosensors and Bioelectronics*, 7:207-214, 1991.

Aizawa, "Immunosensors," *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond.*, B316:121-134, 1987.

Alvarez-Icaza and Bilitewski, "Mass production of biosensors," *Anal. Chem.*, 65:525A-533A, 1993.

Anderson, Rossi, Tukey, Quattrochi, "A biomarker, P450 RGS, for assessing the induction potential environmental samples," *Environ. Toxicol. Chem.*, 14:7, 1159-1169, 1995.

Andrew and Roberts, "Construction of a bioluminescent *Mycobacterium* and its use for assay of antimycobacterial agents," *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, 31:2251-2254, 1993.

Anis, Wright, Rogers, Thompson, Valdes, Eldefrawi, "A fiber-optic immunosensor for detecting parathion," *Anal. Lett.*, 25:627-635, 1992.

Applegate, Kelly, Lackey, McPherson, Kehrmeyer, Menn, Bienkowski, Sayler, "*Pseudomonas putida* B2: A *tod-lux* bioluminescent reporter for toluene and trichloroethylene co-metabolism," *J. Ind. Microbiol.*, 18:4-9, 1997.

Applegate, Lackey, McPherson, Menn, "A bioluminescent reporter for the co-oxidation of trichloroethylene (TCE) by the toluene dioxygenase in *Pseudomonas putida* FI," *In*: *Abstracts of the 93rd ASM General Meeting*, Atlanta, GA., 1993.

Armon, Dosoretz, Starosvetsky, Orshansky, Saadi, "Sol-gel applications in environmental biotechnology," *J. Biotech.*, 51:279-285, 1996.

Arnold, "Fibre-optic biosensors," *J. Biotechnol.*, 15:219-228, 1990.

Ausubel, Brent, Kingston, Moore, Seidman, Smith, Struhl, "Current protocols in molecular biology," John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1989.

Bagdasarian *et al.*, *Gene*, 16:237, 1981.

Baldwin, Devine, Heckel, Lin, Shadel, "The complete nucleotide sequence of the lux regulon of Vibrio fischeri and the luxABN region of Photobacterium leiognathi and the mechanism of control of bacterial bioluminescence," *J. Biolum. Chemilum.*, 4:326-341, 1989.

Barnard and Walt, "Optical immunosensors using controlled-release polymers," *In: Biosensors and Chemical Sensors, Optimizing Performance Through Polymeric Materials*, P.G. Edelman and J. Wang (Eds.), American Chemical Society Symposium Series, 487, ACS, Washington, pp 310-320, 1992.

Bateman, Speer, Feudic, Hartline,. "Naphthalene association and uptake in *Pseudomonas putida.*," *J. Bacteriol.*, 166:155-161, 1986.

Baum *et al., Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 56:3420-3428, 1990.

Belkin, Smulski, Vollmer, Van Dyk, LaRossa, "Oxidative stress detection with *Escherichia coli* harboring a katG'::*lux* fusion," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 62:2252-2256, 1996.

Bhatia, Shriver-Lake, Prior, Georger, Calvert, Bredehorst, Ligler, "Use of thio-terminal silanes and heterobifunctional crosslinkers for immobilization of antibodies on silica surfaces," *Anal. Biochem.*, 178:408-413, 1989.

Biberger and Angerer, "2-Phenylindoles with sulfur containing side chains. Estrogen receptor affinity, antiestrogenic potency, and antitumor activity," *J. Steroid Biochem. Molec. Biol.*, 58:31-43, 1996.

Blackburn, Talley, Booth, Durfor, Martin, Napper, Rees, "Potentiometric biosensor employing catalytic antibodies as the molecular recognition element," *Anal. Chem.*, 62:2211-2216, 1990.

Blanchard, Taylor, Busey, Williamson, "Regeneration of immunosorbent surfaces used in clinical, industrial and environmental biosensors. Role of covalent and non-covalent interactions," *J. Immunol. Method.*, 130:263-275, 1990.

Bluestein and Chen, "Rapid response fiber optic evanescent wave immunosensors," *Immunol. Ser.*, 53:145-170, 1990.

Blum, Gautier, Coulet, "Design of luminescence photobiosensors," *J. Biolumin. Chemilumin.*, 4:543-550, 1989.

Bousse, *Sens. Actuat.* 34:270-275, 1996.

Brinkley, "Selecting a storage tank system," *Pollution Eng.*, 29:76-79, 1997.

Bruno, Gucci, Pierdominici, Ioppolo, Volterra, "Presence of saxitoxin in toxic extracts from Gonyaulax polyedra," *Toxicon*, 28(9):1113-1116, 1990.

Buerk, *In: Biosensors Theory and Applications,* Buerk, D.G. (Ed.), Technomic Publications, Lancaster, PA, pp 1170-1193, 1993.

Burlage, Heitzer, Sayler, "Bioluminescence a versatile bioreporter for monitoring bacterial activity," *Biotech. Forum Europe,* 9:704-709, 1992.

Burlage, Palumbo, Heitzer, Sayler, "Bioluminescent reporter bacteria detect contaminants in soil samples," *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 45/46:731-740, 1994.

Burlage, Sayler, Larimer,. "Monitoring of naphthalene catabolism by bioluminescence with *nah-lux,* transcriptional fusions," *J. Bacteriol.*, 172:4749-4757, 1990.

Byers, Cook, Meighen, "The source of fatty acid for bacterial luminescence," J. Schulmerich, R. Andreesen, A. Kapp, M. Ernst, and W.G. Woods (Eds.), *In: Bioluminescence and Chemiluminescence New Perspectives,* John Wiley & Sons, New York, pp 405-408, 1987.

Cassidy, Lee, Trevors, "Environmental applications of immobilized microbial cells: a review," *J. Indust. Microbiol.*, 16:79-101, 1996.

Cebolla, Vazquez, Palomares, *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 61:660-668, 1995.

Chatterjee and Meighen, *Photochem. Photobiol.*, 62:641-650, 1995.

Chou and Que Hee, "Microtox EC50 values for drinking water by-products produced by ozonolysis," *Ecotoxicol. Environ. Saf.*, 23(3):355-363, 1992.

Colepicolo, Camarero, Eckstein, Hastings, "Induction of bacterial luciferase by pure oxygen," *J. Gen. Microbiol.*," 138:831-836, 1992.

Cooksey, Crawford, Jacobs Shinnick, "A rapid method for screening antimicrobial agents for activities against a strain of *mycobacterium tuberculosis* expressing firefly luciferase," *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, 37:1348-1352, 1993.

Costa and Rodrigues, "Phenol adsorption on polymeric absorbents," *AIChE J.*, 31:1645-1654, 1985.

Crank, "The mathematics of diffusion," Clarendon Press, Oxford, UK, 1975.

Danckwerts, "Continuous flow systems," *Chem. Eng. Sci.*, 2:1-13, 1953.

Danielsson, "Calorimetric biosensors," *J. Biotechnol.*, 15:187-200, 1990.

Danilov and Ismailov, "Bacterial luciferase as a biosensor of biologically active compounds," Wise (Ed.), *In: Applied biosensors*, Butterworth, Stonehan, Mass., pp 39-78, 1989.

Darnell, Lodish, Baltimore, *In: Molecular Cell Biology*, 2nd Ed., Scientific American Books, New York, 1990.

De Lorenzo, Fernandez, Herrero, Jakubik, Timmis, "Engineering of alkyl- and haloaromatic-responsive gene expression with mini-transposons containing regulated promoters of biodegradative pathways of *Pseudomonas*," *Gene*, 130:41-46, 1993.

DeSmet, Kingma, Witholt, "The effect of toluene on the structure and permeability of the outer and cytoplasmic membranes of eshericia coli," *Biochemica et Biophsica Acta.*, 506:64-80, 1978.

DiGrazia, "Microbial systems analysis of naphthalene degradation in a continuous flow soil slurry reactor," *Ph.D. thesis*, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN, USA, 1991.

Don, Cox, Wainwright, Baker, Mattick, "'Touchdown' PCR™ to circumvent spurious priming during gene amplification," *Nuc. Acids Res.*, 19:4008, 1991.

Dooley and Testa, "Stability and Microtox Response of Butenyltin Compounds," *Appl. Organometal. Chem.*, 3:171-176, 1989.

Doshi, Rohatgi, Jellison, *Appl. Opt.*,.

Downs, "Prospects for Nucleic-Acid biosensors," *Biochem. Soc. Trans.*, 19:39-43, 1991.

Dunbar, "A mathematical model correlating catabolic gene activity with biodegradation rates using a bioluminescent reporter strain," *Ph.D. thesis*, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN, USA, 1992.

Eisman, Landon-Arnold, Swindoll, "Determination of petroleum hydrocarbon toxicity with Microtox," *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 47(6):811-816, 1991.

Ensley, "Biochemical diversity of trichloroethylene metabolism," *Ann. Rev. Microbiol.*, 45:283-299, 1991.

Eray, Dogan, Reiken, Sutisna, Van Wie, Koch, Moffet, Silber, Davis, "A highly stable and selective biosensor using modified nicotinic acetylcholine receptor (n-AChR)," *BioSystems*, 35:183-188, 1995.

Eres and Lowndes, U.S. Patent No. 5,110,790, 1992.

Fägerstam and O'Shannessy, "Surface plasmon resonance detection in affinity technologies," *In: Handbook of Affinity Chromatography, Chromatogr. Sci. Ser.*, 63:229-252, 1993.

Fernandez, Tejedor, Cabrera, Chordi, "Assessment of toxicity of river water and effluents by the bioluminescence assay using *photobacterium phosphoreum*," *Wat. Res.*, 29:1281-1286, 1995.

Figurski and Helsinki, "Replication of an origin-containing derivative of plasmid RK@ is dependent on a plasmid function provided in *trans*," *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 76:1648-1652, 1979.

Filatov, Björklund, Johansson, Thelander, "Induction of the Mouse Ribonucleotide Reductase R1 and R2 Genes in Response toDNA Damage by UV Light," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:23698-23704, 1996.

Filipic, "Mutagenicity and toxicity of water extracts from the Sora river area," *Mutat. Res.*, 342(1-2):1-8, 1995.

Fox, Hirning, Kongsamut, McCleskey, Miller, Olivera, Perney, Thayer, Tsien, "The interaction of toxins with calcium channels," *In: Neurotoxins and their Pharmacological Implications*, P. Jenner (eds.), Raven Press, New York, pp. 115-132, 1987.

Frew and Hill, "Electron transfer biosensors," *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond.*, B316:95-106, 1987.

Frohman, *In: PCR Protocols, a Guide to Methods and Applications XVIII Ed.*, Academic Press, 1990.

Geiger and Molner-Kubica, "Tetrachloroethylene in contaminated ground and drinking waters," *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 19:457-580, 1977.

Gennis, *In: Biomembranes: Molecular Structure and Function*, Springer, New York, 1989.

Gibson and Sayler, "Scientific foundations of bioremediation current status and future needs," The American Academy of Microbiology, 1992.

Gibson and Woodward, "Protein stabilization in biosensor systems," *In: Biosensors and Chemical Sensors, Optimizing Performance Through Polymeric Materials*, P.G. Edelman and J. Wang (eds.), American Chemical Society Symposium Series, 487, ACS, New York, pp. 40-55, 1992.

Giesy, Rosiu, Graney, Newsted, Benda, Kreis Jr., Horvath, "Toxicity of Detroit River Sediments InterstitialWater to the Bacterium *Photobacterium phosphoreum*," *J. Great Lakes Res.*, 14:502-513, 1988.

Givskov, Eberl, Molin, "Responses to nutrient starvation in *Pseudomonas putida* KT2442: analysis of general cross-protection, cell shape, and macromolecular content," *J. Bacteriol.*, 176:7-14, 1994.

Gotoh, Tamiya, Momoi, Kagawa, Karube, "Acetylcholine sensor based on ion sensitive field effect transistor and acetylcholine receptor," *Anal. Lett.*, 20:857-870, 1987.

Grate, Martin, White, "Acoustic wave microsensors," Part 2, *Anal. Chem.*, 65:987A-996A, 1993.

Griffiths and Hall, "Biosensors-What real progress is being made?" *Trends Biotechnol.*, 11:122-130, 1993.

Gu *et al.*, *Biotechnol.*, 12:393-397, 1996.

Guckert, Ringelberg, White, Hanson, Bratina, "Membrane fatty acids as phenotypic markers in the polyphasic taxonomy of methylotrophs within the proteobacteria," *J. Gen. Microbiol.*, 137:2631-2641, 1991.

Guilbault and Luong, "Gas phase biosensors," *J. Biotechnol.*, 9:1-10, 1988.

Guilbault and Schmidt, "Biosensors for the determination of drug substances," *Biotechnol. Appl. Biochem.*, 14:133-145, 1991.

Gupta and. Goldwasser, "The role of the near upstream sequence in hypoxia-induced expression of the erythropoietin gene," *Nucleic-Acids Research*, 24(23):4768-4774, 1996.

Guzzella, Bartone, Ross, Tartari, Muntau, "Toxicity identification evaluation of Lake Orta (Northern Italy) sediments using the Microtox system," *Ecotoxicol. Environ. Saf.*, 35(3):231-235, 1996.

Guzzo and DuBow, "A *lux*AB transcriptional fusion to the cryptic *cel*F gene of *E. coli* displays increased luminescence in the presence of nickel," *Mol. Gen. Genet.* 242:455-460, 1994.

Guzzo, Guzzo, DuBow, "Characterization of the effects of aluminum on luciferase biosensors for the detection of ecotoxicity," *Toxicol. Lett.*, 64-65:687-693, 1992.

Hall, *In: Biosensors*, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Press, New Jersey, 1991.

Hankenson and Schaeffer, "Microtox Assay of Trinitrotoluene, Diaminonitrotoluene, and Dinitromethylaniline Mixtures," *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 46:550-553, 1991.

Harrison, Perry, and Wellings,. "Polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in raw, potable and waste waters," *Water Res.*, 9:331-346, 1975.

Hastings, *Gene*, 17:5-11, 1996.

Hastings, Potrikus, Gupta, Kurfurst, Makemson, "Biochemistry and physiology of bioluminescent bacteria," *Adv. Microb. Physiol.*, 26:325-291, 1985.

Haynes and Sarma, "A model for the application of gas chromatography to measurements of diffusion in bidispersed structural catalysts," *AIChE J.*, 19:1043-1046, 1973.

Haynes, Stura, Hilvert, Wilson, "Routes to catalysis: structure of a catalytic antibody and comparison with its natural counterpart," *Science*, 263:646-652, 1994.

Heald and Jenkins, "TCE removal and oxidation toxicity mediated by toluene dioxygenase of *Pseudomonas putida*," *App. Environ. Microbiol.*, 60:4634-4637, 1994.

Heck, Massey, Aitken, "Toxicity of Reaction Products from Enzymatic Oxidation of Phenolic Pollutants," *Water Sci. Tech.*, 26:2369-2371, 1992.

Heil and Lindsay, "Toxicological properties of thio- and alkylphenols causing flavor tainting in fish from the upper Wisconsin River," *J. Environ. Sci. Health*, 24(4):349-360, 1989.

Heitzer and Saylet, "Monitoring the efficacy of bioremediation," *Trends Biotechnol.*, 11:334-343, 1993.

Heitzer *et al.*, *J. Microbiol. Methods*, **(IN PRESS)**.

Heitzer, Malachowsky, Thonnard, Bienkowski, White, Sayler, "Optical biosensor for environmental online monitoring of naphthalene and salicylate bioavailability with a immobilized bioluminescent catabolic reporter bacterium," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 60:1487-1494, 1994.

Heitzer, Webb, DiGrazia, Sayler, "A versatile bioluminescent reporter system for organic pollutant bioavailability and biodegradation," *In*: *Applications of Molecular Biology in Environmental Chemistry*, Minear *et al.*, eds., CRC Press, New York, pp. 191-208, 1995.

Heitzer, Webb, Thonnard, Sayler, "Specific and quantitative assessment of naphthalene and salicylate bioavailability by using a bioluminescent catabolic reporter bacterium," *App. Environ. Microbiol.*, 58:1839-1846, 1992.

Hendry, Higgins, Bannister, "Amperometric biosensors," *J. Biotechnol.*, 15:229-238, 1990.

Herrero, de Lorenzo, Timmis, "Transposon vectors containing non-antibiotic resistance selection markers for cloning and stable chromosomal insertion of foreign genes in gram-negative bacteria," *J. Bacteriol.*, 172:6557-6567, 1990.

Hill and Stewart, *J. Biolum. Chemilum.*, 9:211-215, 1994.

Hill, Urwin, Crampton, "A comparison of non-radioactive labeling and detection systems with synthetic oligonucleotide probes for the species identification of mosquitoes in the *Anopheles gambiae* complex," *Am. J. Trop. Med. Hyg.*, 44(6):609-622, 1991.

Holmes and Quigley, "A rapid boiling method for the preparation of bacterial plasmids," *Anal. Biochem.*, 114:193-197, 1981.

Hyun *et al.*, *Biotechnology and Bioengineering*, 41:1107-1111, 1993.

Ingram, "Changes in lipid composition of Escherichia coli resulting from growth with organic solvents and with food additives," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.* 33:1233-1236, 1977.

Ingram, "Regulation of fatty acid composition in Escherichia coli: A proposed common mechanism for changes induced by ethanol, chaotropic agents, and a reduction of growth temperature," *J. Bacteriol.*, 149:166-172, 1982.

Janata, *In*: *Principles of Chemical Sensors*, Plenum Press, New York, 1989.

Jausons-Loffreda, Balaguer, Roux, Fuentes, Pons, Nicolas, Gelmini, Pazzagli, "Chimeric receptors as a tool for luminescent measurement of biological activities of steroid hormones," *J. Biolumin. Chemilumin.*, 9(3):217-221, 1994.

Jellison, Modine, Doshi, Rohatgi, *Appl. Phys. Lett.*, **(IN PRESS)**.

Johnston, "Fate *of Pseudomonas fluorescens* 5RL and its reporter plasmid for naphthalene biodegradation in soil environments," Ph.D. Dissertation, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN, 1996.

Kaiser, and Ribo, "*Photobacterium phosphoreum* toxicity bioassay. II. Toxicity data compilation," *Toxicity Assess. Int.* Q., 3:195-238, 1988.

Kanasawud, Hjorleifsdottir, Holst, Mattiasson, "Studies on immobilization of the thermophilic bacterium *Thermus aquaticus* YT-1 by entrapment in various matrices," *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 31:228-233, 1989.

Karube, "Microbial sensor," *J. Biotechnol.*, 15:255-266, 1990.

Karuppiah and Gupta, "Impact of point and nonpoint source pollution on pore waters of two Chesapeake Bay tributaries," *Ecotoxicol. Environ. Saf.*, 35(1):81-85, 1996.

Karuppiah, Liggans, Gupta, "Effect of river and wetland sediments on toxicity of metolachlor," *Ecotoxicol. Environ. Saf.*, 36(2):180-182, 1997.

Kataoka, Yoshida, Yamada, "Liquid-phase mass transfer in ion exchange based on the hydraulic radius model," *J. Chem. Eng. Jpn.*, 6:172-177, 1973.

Kauffman and Guilbault, "Enzyme electrode biosensors: theory and applications," *Bioanal. Appl. Enzymes.*, 36:36-113, 1992.

Kavanagh and Hill, *Journal of Applied Bacteriology,* 69:539-549, 1990.

Kimura and Kuriyama, "FET biosensors," *J. Biotechnol.*, 15:239-254, 1990.

King *et al.*, *Science* 249:778-781, 1990.

King, DiGrazia, Applegate, Burlage, Sansevrino, Dunbar, Larimer, Saylet, "Rapid, sensitive bioluminescent reporter technology for naphthalene exposure and biodegradation," *Science*, 249:778-781, 1990.

Kishore, Singh, Das, *Solar Eng. Mater. Solar Cells,* 26:27-35, 1992.

Kjelleberg, Albertson, Flardh, Holmquist, Jouper-Jaan, Marouga, Ostling, Svenblad, Weichart, "How do nondifferentiating bacterial adapt to starvation?" *Antonie van Leeuenhoek*, 63:333-341, 1993.

Klein, Stock, Vorlop, Pore size and properties of spherical Ca-alginate biocatalysts," *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 18:86-91, 1983.

Kuby, J., *Immunology 2nd Edition*, W. H. Freeman and Company, NY, 1994.

Kuhn, Peretti, Ollis, "Microfluorometric analysis of spatial and temporal patterns of immobilized cell growth," *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 38:340-352, 1991.

Kung, Panfili, Sheldon, King, Nagainis, Gomez, Ross, Briggs, Zuk, "Picogram quantitation of total DNA using DNA-binding proteins in a silicon sensor-based system," *Anal. Biochem.*, 187:220-227, 1990.

Kunkel *et al., Methods Enzymol.,* 154:367-382, 1987.

Kyte and Doolittle, *J. Mol. Biol.*, 157:105-132, 1982.

Lackey, Phelps, Bienkowski, White, "Biodegradation of chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbon mixtures in a single-pass packed-bed reactor," *Appl. Biochem. Biotech.*, 39/40:701-713,1993.

Lau, Bergeron, Labbe, Wang, Brousseau, Gibson, "Sequence and expression of the *todGIH* genes involved in the last three steps of toluene degradation by *Pseudomonas putida* F1," *Gene*, 146:7-13, 1994.

Lawton *et al.,* "Use of a rapid bioluminescence assay for detecting cyanobacterial microcystin toxicity," Letters in *Applied Microbiology,* 11(4):205-7, 1990.

Lazdunski, Frelin, Barhanin, Lombet, Meiri, Pauron, Romey, Schmid, Schweitz, Vigne, Vijverberg, "Polypeptide toxins as tools to study voltage-sensitive Na+ channels," *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.*, 479:204-220, 1987.

Lee and Thompson, "Fibre optic biosensor assay of Newcastle Disease Virus," *Defense Research Establishment Suffield, Canada, Suffield Report No. 580*, pp. 1-36, 1993.

Lee, Novotny, Bartle, "Analytic chemistry of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons," *Academic Press*, New York, 1979.

Lee, Suzuki, Tamiya, Karube, "Sensitivie Bioluminescent Detection of Pesticides Utilizing a Membrane Mutant of Escherichia Coli and Recombinant DNA Technology," *Anal. Chem. Acta*, 257:183-188, 1992.

Leonhardt, Szwajcer, Mosbac, "The potential use of silicon compounds as oxygen carriers for free and immobilized cells containing L-amino acid oxidase," *Microbiol. and Biotech.*, 21:162-166, 1985.

Lerner, Benkovic, Schultz, "At the crossroads of chemistry and immunology: catalytic antibodies," *Science*, 252:659-667, 1991.

Libby and Wada, "Detection of Nesseria meningitidis and Yersinia pestis with a novel silicon-based sensor," *J. Clin. Microbiol.*, 27:1456-1459, 1989.

Lloyd *et al.*, "A membrane-covered photobacterium probe for oxygen measurements in the nonomolar range," *Anal. Biochem.*, 116:17-21, 1981.

Lowe, "Biosensors," *Phil. Trans. R. Soc. Lond.*, B324:487-496, 1989.

Lowe, Yon Hin, Cullen, Evans, Gray, Stephens, Maynard, "Biosensors," *J. Chromatogr.*, 510:347-354, 1990.

Madsen and Sincovec, "Algorithm 540 PDECOL, general collocation software for partial differential equations," *ACM Trans. Math. Software*, 5:326-351, 1979.

Maillard *et al.*, "Rapid Detection of Mutagens by Induction of Luciferase-Bearing Prophage in *Escherichia coli*," *Environ. Sci. Technol.*, 30:2478-2483, 1996.

Makino, Adams, McTernan, "Toxicity of granular activated carbon treated coal gasification water as determined by the Microtox test and *Escherichia coli*," *Microbiologica*, 9(1):53-61, 1986.

Malik *et al.*, *J. Appl. Phys.*, 79:8507-8511, 1996.

Maloy *et al.*, "Microbial Genetics" 2nd Edition. Jones and Barlett Publishers, Boston, MA, 1994.

Maloy, S.R., "Experimental Techniques in Bacterial Genetics" Jones and Bartlett Publishers, Boston, MA, 1990.

Maltoni and Lefemine, "Carcinogenicity bioassays of vinyl chloride. I. Research plan and early results," *Environ. Res.*, 7:387-396, 1974.

Marouga and Kjelleberg, "Synthesis of immediate upshift (Iup) proteins during recovery of marine *Vibrio* sp. strain S1 subjected to long-term carbon starvation," *J. Bacteriol*, 178:817-822, 1996.

McInnes *et al.*, *J. Acoust. Soc. Am,* 88(6), 1990.

Meighen, "Enzymes and genes from the lux operons of bioluminescent bacteria," *Annu. Rev. Microbiol.*, 42:151-176, 1988.

Meighen, "Molecular biology of bacterial bioluminescence," *Microbiol. Rev.*, 55:123-142, 1991.

Menking and Goode, "Evaluation of cocktailed antibodies for toxin and pathogen assays on the light addressable potentiometric sensor," *In: Proc. 1992 ERDEC Scientific Conference on Chemical Defense Research*, 17-20 November, J.D. Williams, D.A. Berg and P.J. Reeves (eds.), Report No. ERDEC-SP-007, June, pp. 103-109, 1993.

Menn, "Studies on 3-methylcatechol 2,3-dioxygenase and 2-hydroxy-6-oxohepta-2,4-dienote hydrolase: key enzymes in the degradation of toluene by *Pseudomonas putida* F1," PhD Dissertation, University of Iowa, Iowa City, IA, 1991.

Menn, Applegate, Sayler, "NAH plasmid-mediated catabolism of anthracene and phenanthrene to naphthoic acids," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 59(6):1938-1942, 1993.

Menn, Zylstra, Gibson, "Location and sequence of the *todF* gene encoding 2-hydroxy-6-oxohepta-2,4-dienote hydrolase in *Pseudomonas putida* F1," *Gene*, 104:91-94, 1991.

Merchant, Margaritis, Wallace, Vardanis, "A novel technique for measuring solute diffusivities in entrapment matrices used in immobilization," *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 30:936-945, 1987.

Michael, *Biotechniques*, 16:410-412, 1994.

Middaugh, Mueller, Thomas, Lantz, Hemmer, Brooks, Chapman, "Detoxification of pentachlorophenol and creosote contaminated groundwater by physical extraction: chemical and biological assessment," *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 21(2):233-244, 1991.

Morel, Bitton, Koopman, "Use of Microtox for assessing copper complexation with organic compounds," *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 17(4):493-496, 1988.

Morita, "Starvation and miniaturisation of heterotrophs, with special emphasis on maintenance of the starved viable state," Fletcher M. Floodgate GD (eds), *In*: *Bacteria in their natural environments*, Academic Press, London, pp. 111-130, 1985.

Morita, "Bioavailability of energy and the starvation state," Kjelleberg S (ed) *In*: *Starvation in bacteria*," Plenum, New York, 1-23, 1993.

Mrksich and Whitesides, "Patterning self-assembled monolayers using microcontact printing: a new technology for biosensors," *Trends Biotechnol.*, 13:228-235, 1995.

National Research Council, "*In-Situ* Bioremediation-When Does It Work?" National Academy Press, Washington, D.C., 1993.

Nelson, Montgomery, Pritchard, "Trichloroethylene metabolism by microorganisms that degrade aromatic compounds," *App. Environm. Microbiol.*, 54:604-606, 1988.

Ngeh-Ngwainbi, Foley, Kuan, Guilbault, "Parathion antibodies on piezoelectric crystals," *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 108:5444-5447, 1986.

North, "Immunosensors: antibody based biosensors," *Trends Biotechnol.*, 3:180-186, 1985.

O'Kane and Prasher, *Mol. Microbiol.*, 6:443-449, 1992.

Ogert, Brown, Singh, Shriver-Lake, Ligler, "Detection of *Clostridium botulinum* toxin A using a fibre opticbased biosensor," *Anal. Biochem.*, 205:306-312, 1992.

Ohara *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 86(15):5673-5677, 1989.

Oldenhuis, Vink, Jansen, Witholt, "Degradation of chlorinated aliphatic hydrocarbons by *Methylosinus trichosporium* OB3b expressing soluble methane monooxygenase," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 55:2819-2826, 1989.

Olson *et al.*, *J. Bacteriol.*, 150:6069, 1982.

Owicki, Bousse, Hafeman, Kirk, Olson, Wada, Parce, "The light-addressable potentiometric sensor. Principles and applications," *Ann. Rev. Biophys. Biomol. Struct.*, 23:87-113, 1994.

Oyass, Storro, Svedsen, Levine, "The effective diffusion coefficient and distribution constant for small molecules in calcium alginate," *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 47:492-500, 1995.

Paddle, "Biosensors for chemical and biological agents of defence interest," *Biosensors and Bioelectronics*, 11(11):1079-1113, 1996.

Petura, "Trichloroethylene and methylchloroform in ground water: a problem assessment," *J. Am. Water Works Assoc.*, 73:200-205, 1981.

Pinkart, Wolfram, Rogers, White, "Cell envelpope canges in solvent-tolerant and solvent sensitive Pseudomonas putida strains following exposure to o-xylene," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*,62:1129-1132, 1996.

Piunno, Krull, Hudson, Damha, Cohen, "Fiber optic biosensor for fluorimetric detection of DNA hybridization," *Anal. Chim. Acta*, 288:205-214, 1994.

Pons, Gagne, Nicolas, Mehtali, "A new cellular model of response to estrogens: A bioluminescent test to characterize (anti)estrogen molecules," *BioTechniques*, 9:450-459, 1990.

Poremba, Gunkel, Lang, Wagner, "Marine biosurfactants, III. Toxicity testing with marine microorganisms and comparison with synthetic surfactants," *Z. Naturforsch.*, 46(3-4):210-216, 1991.

Prest, Winson, Hammond, Stewart, "The construction and application of a lux-based nitrate biosensor," *Lett. Appl. Microbiol.*, 24(5):355-360, 1997.

Prokop, and Bajpai, "Recombinant DNA Technology I" *Ann. N. Y. Acad. Sci.*, 646:xx-xx, 1991.

Promega, *In: Promega technical bulletin 009*, Promega, Madison, WI, 1992.

Prusak-Sochaczewski, Luong, Guilbault, "Development of a piezoelectric immunosensor for the detection of *Salmonella typhimurium*," *Enzyme Microbiol. Technol.*, 12:173-177, 1990.

Ramsay, Guilbault, Ngeh-Ngwainbi, "Stabilization of biomaterials-new approaches," *US Army Chemical Research, Development and Engineering Center Report CRDEC-CR-074*, pp. 1-108, 1990.

Rechnitz and Ho, "Biosensors based on cell and tissue material," *J. Biotechnol.*, 15:201-218, 1990.

Rice, Fowler, Arrage, White, Sayler, "Effects of external stimuli on environmental bacterial strains harboring an *algD-lux* bioluinescent reporter plasmid for the study of corrosive biofilms," *J. Ind. Microbiol.*, 15:318-328, 1995.

Rietti-Shati, Ronen, Mandelbaum, *J. Sol-Gel Sci. Technol.*, 7:77-79, 1996.

Riser-Roberts, E. 1992. *In: Bioremediation of petroleum contaminated sites.* CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL. p 471.

Roberts, *In: Langmuir-Blodgett Films*, Plenum Press, New York, 1990.

Roe, "Biosensor development," *Pharm. Res.*, 9:835-844, 1992.

Rogowsky, Close, Chimera, Shaw, Kado, "Regulation of the *vir* genes *of Agrobacterium tumefaciens* plasmid pTiC58," *J. Bacteriol.*, 169:5101-5112, 1987.

Rook, "Immunity to viruses, bacteria and fungi," *In: Immunology*, I. Roitt, J. Brostoff and D. Male (eds.), Gower Medical Publishing, London, pp. 16.1-16.15, 1989.

Ruthyen, *In: Principles of adsorption and adsorption processes*, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1984.

Sadik, John, Wallace, Barnett, Clarke, Laing, "Pulsed amperometric detection of thaumatin using antibody-containing poly(pyrrole) electrodes," *Analyst.*, 119:1997-2000, 1994.

Saiki, Scharf, Faloona, Mullis, Horn, Erlich, Arnheim, "Enzymatic amplification of β-globin genomic sequences and restriction site analysis for diagnosis of sickle cell anemia," *Science*, 230:1350-1354, 1985.

Sambrook, Fritsch, Maniatis, *In: Molecular cloning: a laboratory manual*, 2nd ed. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Plainview, NY, 1989.

Sayler and Layton, "Environmental application of nucleic-acid hybridization," *Annu. Rev. Microbiol.*, 44:625-648, 1990.

Sayler, Hooper, Layton, King, "Catabolic plasmids of environmental and ecological significance," *Microbial. Ecol.*, 19:1-20, 1990.

Sayler, Lund, Shiaris, Sherril, Perkins, "Comparative effects of AroClor 1254 (polychlorinated biphenyls) and phenanthrene on glucose uptake by freshwater microbial populations," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 37:878-885, 1993.

Schall, Vasconcellos, Valent, Sato, Furlan, Sanchez, "Evaluation of the genotoxic activity and acute toxicity of Euphorbia splendens latex, a molluscicide for the control of schistosomiasis," *Braz. J. Med. Biol. Res.*, 24(6):573-582, 1991.

Schell, "Regulation of the naphthalene degradation genes of plasmid NAH7: example of a generalized positive control system in Pseudomonas and related bacteria," S. Silver, A.M. Chakrabarty, B. Iglewsky, S. Kaplan (Eda.),

In: Pseudomonas: biotransformations, pathogenesis and evolving biotechnology. American Society for Microbiology, Washington, DC, pp 165-176., 1990.

Schell, "Transcriptional control of the nah and sal hydrocarbon degradation operons by the *nahR* gene product," *Gene,* 36:301-309, 1985.

Scheller, Schubert, Pfeiffer, Hintsche, Dransfeld, Renneberg, Wollenberger, Riedel, Pavlova, Kuhn, Müller, Tan, Hoffmann, Moritz, "Research and development of biosensors," *Analyst (Lond.)*, 114:653-662, 1989.

Schuhmann, Lehn, Schmidt, "Comparison of native and chemically stabilized enzymes in amperometric enzyme electrodes," *Sensors and Actuators B.*, 7:393-398, 1992.

Schultz, "Sensitivity and dynamics of bioreactor-based biosensors," *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.*, 506:406-414, 1987.

Segal, "Biochemical Calculations" 2nd Edition, John Wiley and Sons, New York, 1976.

Selifonova and Eaton, "Use of an *ipb-lux* fusion to study regulation of the isopropylbenzene catabolism operon of *Pseudomonas putida* RE204 and to detect hydrophobic pollutants in the environment," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 62:778-783, 1996.

Selifonova, Burlage, Barkay, "Bioluminescent sensors for detection of bioavailable Hg(II) in the environment," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 59(9):3083-3090, 1993.

Sellergren, Ekberg, Mosback, "Molecular imprinting of amino acid derivatives in macroporous polymers. Demonstration of substrate- and enantio-selectivity by chromatographic resolution of racemic mixtures of amino acid derivatives," *J. Chromatogr.*, 347:1-10, 1985.

Shahin and Von Borstel, "Mutagenic and lethal effects of α-benzene hexachloride, dibutyl phthalate and trichloroethylene in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*," *Mut. Res.*, 48:173-180, 1977.

Shaw, Settles, Kado, "Transposon Tn*4431* mutagenesis of *Xanthomonas campestris* pv. *campestris:* Characterization of a nonpathogenic mutant and cloning of a locus for pathogenicity," *Mol. Plant-Microbe Int.*, 1:39-45, 1988.

Shields and Reagin, "Selection of a *Pseudomonas cepacia* strain constitutive for the degradation of trichloroethylene," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 58:3977-3983, 1992.

Shreve and Vogel, "Comparison of substrate utilization and growth kinetics between immobilized and suspended *Pseudomonas* cells," *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 41:370-379, 1993.

Siegrist, Korte, Pickering, Phelps, "Bioremediation demonstration on Kwajalein island: site characterization and on-site biotreatability studies. ORNL/TM-11894," Martin Marrieta Energy Systems, Inc., Oak Ridge, TN, 1991.

Sikkama, deBont, Poolman. "Mechanisms of membrane toxicity of hydrocarbons," *Microbiol. Rev.,* 59: 201-222, 1995.

Simpson *et al.*, *Rev. Sci. Instrum.,* 69:377-383, 1997.

Simpson *et al.*, *Trends in Biotech.,* 1998.

Smith, Dawson, Gannon, "The 16S/23S ribosomal RNA spacer region as a target for DNA probes to identify potential biological warfare threats," *In: Proc. 1993 ERDEC Scientific Conference on Chemical Defense Research,* 16-19 November, D.A. Berg, J.D. Williams Jr. and P.J. Reeves (eds.) Report No. ERDEC-SP-024, August, pp. 603-608, 1994.

Smith, Harper, Jaber, "Analysis and environmental fate of Air Force distillate and high density fuels," Air Force Engineering and Services Center, Tyndall Air Force Base, FL, ESL-TR-81-54, 1981.

Somasundaram, Coates, Racke, Stahr, "Application of the Microtox System to Assess the Toxicity of Pesticides and their Hydrolysis Products," *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 44:254-259, 1990.

Stanier, Palleroni, Doudoroff, "The aerobic Pseudomonads: A taxonomic study," *J. Gen. Microbiol.*, 41:159-271, 1966.

Stein and Schwedt, "Comparison of immobilization methods for the development of an acetylcholinesterase biosensor," *Anal. Chim. Acta*, 272:73-81, 1993.

Steinberg and Poziomek, *Chemosphere*, 11:2155-2197, 1995.

Storck, "Chlorinated solvents use hurt by federal rules," *Chem. Eng. News*, 65:11, 1987.

Stormo and Crawford, "Preparation of encapsulated microbial cells for environmental applications," *Applied Environ. Microbiol.*, 58:727-730, 1992.

Sun and Stahr, "Evaluation and Application of a Bioluminescent Bacterial Genotoxicity Test," *J. AOAC Int.*, 76:893-898, 1993.

Swain, "Biosensors: a new realism," *Ann. Biol. Clin. (Paris)*, 50:175-179, 1992.

Sweet and Meier, "Lethal and sublethal effects of azulene and longifolene to Microtox (R), *Ceriodaphnia dubia*, *Daphnia magna*, and *Pimephales promelas*," *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 58(2):268-274, 1997.

Taylor, Frackman, Langlay, Rosson, "Luminescent biosensors for detection of inorganic and organic mercury," *Abstr. Annu. Meet. Am. Soc. Microbiol.*, 1992, Q 323, p. 389, 1992.

Tedesco, Krull, Thompson, "Molecular receptors and their potential for artificial transduction," *Biosensors*, 4:135-167, 1989.

Thomulka and Lange, "Mixture toxicity of nitrobenzene and trinitrobenzene using the marine bacterium *Vibrio harveyi* as the test orgnaism," *Exotoxicol Environ Saf*, 36(2):189-195, 1997.

Thomulka and Lange, "Use of the bioluminescent bacterium *Vibrio harveyi* to detect biohazardous chemicals in soil and water extractions with and without acid," *Exotoxicol Environ Saf*, 32(2):201-204, 1995.

Tien, Salamon, Ottova, "Lipid bilayer-based sensors and biomolecular electronics," *Biomed. Eng.*, 18:323-340, 1991.

Tomic *et al., Nucl. Acids Res.*, 12:1656, 1990.

Tor and Freeman, "New enzyme membrane for enzyme electrodes," *Anal. Chem.*, 58:1042-1046, 1986.

Trevors, van Elsas, Lee, Wolters, "Survival of alginate-encapsulated *Pseudomonas fluorescens* cells in soil," *Appl. Microbiol. Biotechnol.*, 39:637-643, 1993.

Treybal, *In: Mass-transfer operations*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1980.

Tu and Mager, *Photochem. Photobiol.*, 62:615-624, 1995.

Turner, "Molecules which recognize antigen," *In: Immunology*, I. Roitt, J. Brostoff and D. Male (eds.), Gower Medical Publishing, London, pp. 5.1-5.11, 1989.

Turner, Karube, Wilson, (eds.), *In: Biosensors, Fundamentals and Applications*, Oxford University Press, Oxford, 1989.

Ulitzur, Reinhhertz, Hastings, "Factors affecting the cellular expression of bacterial luciferase," *Arch. Microbiol.*, 129:67-71, 1981.

Upender *et al., Biotechniques*, 18:29-31, 1995.

US National Research Council, *In: Protection Against Trichothecene Mycotoxins*, National Academy Press, Washington, DC, p. 4, 1983.

Van Duren and Banerfee, "Covalent interaction of metabolites of the carcinogen trichloroethylene in rat hepatic microsomes," *Cancer Res.*, 36:2419-2422, 1976.

Van Dyk, Majarian, Konstantinov, Young, Dhurjati, Larossa, "Rapid and sensitive pollutant detection by induction of heat shock gene-bioluminescent gene fusions," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 60:1414-1420, 1994.

Van Dyk, Reed, Vollmer, Larossa, "Synergistic induction of the heat shock response in *Eschericia coli* by simultaneous treatment with chemical inducers," *J. Bacteriol.*, 177:6001-6004, 1995.

Van Emon and Lopez-Avila, "Immunochemical methods for environmental analysis," *Anal. Chem.*, 64:79A-88A, 1992.

Virta, Karp, Ronnemaa, Lilius, "Kinetic measurement of the membranolytic activity of serum complement using bioluminescent bacteria," *J. Immunol. Methods*, 201(2):215-221,1997.

Virta, Lampinen, Karp, "A Luminescence-Based Mercury Biosenor," *Anal. Chem.*, 67:667-669, 1995.

Vismara, Rossetti, Bolzacchini, Orlandi, Luperini, Bernardini, "Toxicity evaluation of 4-chloro-2-methylphenoxyacetic acid by Microtox and comparison with FETAX," *Bull. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 56(1):85-89, 1996.

Vlatakis, Andersson, Müller, Mosbach, "Drug assay using antibody mimics made by molecular imprinting," *Nature (London)*, 361:645-647, 1993.

Vorlop, Muscat, Beyersdorf, "Entrapment of microbial cells within polurethane hydrogel beads with the advantage of low toxicity," *Biotech. Techniques*, 6:483-488, 1992.

Wackett and Gibson, "Degradation of trichloroethylene by toluene dioxygenase in whole-cell studies with *Pseudomonas putida* F1," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 54:1703-1708, 1988.

Wackett, Brusseau, Householder, Hanson, "Survey of microbial oxidases: trichloroethylene degradation by propane-oxidizing bacteria," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 55:2960-2964, 1989.

Walker *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89(1):392-396, 1992.

Wallace, Fleming, White, Sayler, "An *alg*D-*lux* bioluminescent reporter plasmid to monitor alginate production in biofilms," *Microb. Ecol.*, 27:225-239, 1994.

Wang *et al.*, *Jpn. J. Appl. Phys.*, 34:955-958, 1995.

Wang, Rawlings, Gibson, Labbe, Bergeron, Brousseau, Lau, "Identification of a membrane protein and a truncated LysR-type regulator associated with the toluene degradation pathway in *Pseudomonas putida* F1," *Mol. Gen. Genet.*, 246:570-579, 1995.

Watson, J. D. *et al.*, *Molecular Biology of the Gene*, 4th Ed., W. A. Benjamin, Inc., Menlo Park, CA, 1987.

Webb, "Anaylsis of *Pseudomonas putida* HK44 for PAH pollutant degradation and migration," PhD Dissertation, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN, 1992a.

Webb, "Biosensor development for monitoring treatment of multicomponent xenobiotics in soil matrices," *Ph.D. thesis*, University of Tennessee, Knoxville, TN, USA, 1992b.

Webb, Phelps, Bienkowski, DiGrazia, Reed, Applegate, White, Saylet, "Development of a differential volume reactor system for soil biodegradation studies," *Appl. Biochem. Biotechnol.*, 28:5-19, 1991.

Wendt, Van Dolah, Bobo, Mathews, Levisen, "Wood preservative leachates from docks in an estuarine environment," *Arch. Environ. Contam. Toxicol.*, 31(1):24-37, 1996.

Westrick, Mello, Thomas, "The groundwater supply survey," *J. Am. Water Works Assoc.*, 76:52-59, 1984.

Westrin and Axelsson, "Diffusion in gels containing immobilized cells: a critical review," *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 38:439-446, 1991.

White, and Dundas, "Effect of anesthetics on emission of light by luminous bacteria," *Nature*, 226:456-458, 1970.

Wijesuriya, Anderson, Ligler, "A rapid and sensitive immunoassay for bacterial cells," *In: Proc. 1993 ERDEC Scientific Conference on Chemical Defense Research*, 16-19 November, D.A. Berg, J.D. Williams Jr. And P.J. Reeves (eds.), Report No. ERDEC-SP-024, August, pp. 671-677, 1994b.

Wingard, "Biosensor trends," *Ann. NY Acad. Sci.*, 613:44-53, 1990.

Wonnacott, "Neurotoxin probes for neuronal nicotinic receptors," *In: Neurotoxins and their Pharmacological Implications*, P. Jenner (ed.), Raven Press, New York, pp. 209-231, 1987.

Wood and Gruber, "Transduction in microbial biosensors using multiplexed bioluminescence," *Biosensors and Bioelectronics,* 11(3)207-214, 1996.

Wood, "Luc Genes: introduction of colour into bioluminescence assays," *Biolumin. and Chemilumin.,* 5:107-114, 1990.

Wu and Wisecarver, "Cell immobilization using PVA crosslinked with boric acid," *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 39:447-449, 1991.

Wu, and Dean, "Functional significance of loops in the receptor binding domain of *Bacillus thuringiensis* CryIIIA δ-endotoxin," *J. Mol. Biol.*, 255:628-640, 1996.

Yen and Serder, "Genetics of naphthalene catabolism in *Pseudomonas,*" *CRC Crit. Rev. Microbiol.*, 15:247-267, 1988.

Zull, Reed-Mundell, Lee, Vezenov, Ziats, Anderson, Sukenik, "Problems and approaches in covalent attachment of peptides and proteins to organic surfaces for biosensor applications," *J. Indust. Microbiol.*, 13:137-143, 1994.

Zylstra and Gibson, "Toluene degradation by *Pseudomonas putida* F1. Nucleotide sequence of the *tod*C1C2BADE genes and their expression in *Escherichia coli,*" *J. Biol. Chem.*, 264:14940-14946, 1989.

Zylstra, Wackett, Gibson, "Trichloroethylene degradation by *Escherichia coli* containing the cloned *Pseudomonas putida* F1 toluene dioxygenase genes," *Appl. Environ. Microbiol.*, 55:3162-3166, 1989.

All of the apparatus, compositions and methods disclosed and claimed herein can be made and executed without undue experimentation in light of the present disclosure. While the apparatus, compositions and methods of this invention have been described in terms of preferred embodiments, it will be apparent to those of skill in the art that variations may be applied to the composition, methods and in the steps or in the sequence of steps of the method described herein without departing from the concept, spirit and scope of the invention. More specifically, it will be apparent that certain agents which are both chemically and physiologically related may be substituted for the agents described herein while the same or similar results would be achieved. All such similar substitutes and modifications apparent to those skilled in the art are deemed to be within the spirit, scope and concept of the invention as defined by the appended claims. Accordingly, the exclusive rights sought to be patented are as described in the claims below.

CLAIMS:

1. An apparatus for detecting the concentration of a selected substance, comprising:

(a) a substrate;

(b) a bioreporter capable of metabolizing or recognizing a selected substance to emit light;

(c) a selectively permeable container affixed to said substrate capable of holding said bioreporter; and,

(d) an integrated circuit on said substrate, including a phototransducer operative to generate a signal in response to said light.

2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein the signal of step (d) indicates the presence of said substance.

3. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising a layer of bioresistant and biocompatible material between said substrate and said container.

4. The apparatus of claim 2, wherein said bioresistant/biocompatible material comprises silicon nitride.

5. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said integrated circuit is a complementary metal oxide semiconductor (CMOS) integrated circuit.

6. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said phototransducer comprises a photodiode.

7. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said integrated circuit further comprises a current to frequency converter and a digital counter.

8. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said integrated circuit further comprises a photodiode and a current to frequency converter.

9. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said integrated circuit further comprises a transmitter.

10. The apparatus of claim 9, wherein said transmitter is wireless.

11. The apparatus of claim 9, further comprising a receiver capable of receiving transmissions from said transmitter.

12. The apparatus of claim 11, wherein transmissions comprise digital data.

13. The apparatus of claim 1, further comprising a fluid and nutrient reservoir and a microfluidic pump on said substrate.

14. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said bioreporter is selected from a group consisting of a genetically-engineered yeast, bacterium, fungal, animal and plant cell.

15. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said selectively permeable container comprises a polymer matrix.

16. The apparatus of claim 15, wherein said polymer matrix is capable of allowing gas or fluid to reach said bioreporter.

17. The apparatus of claim 15, wherein said polymer matrix is optically clear.

18. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said integrated circuit further comprises a global positioning system.

19. A monolithic bioelectronic device for detecting a substance, which comprises:

(a) a bioreporter capable of metabolizing the substance and emitting light consequent to such metabolism; and

(b) a sensor capable of generating an electrical signal in response to the emitted light.

20. The device of claim 19, wherein the bioreporter comprises a nucleic-acid segment encoding a bioluminescent marker.

21. The device of claim 19, further comprising a transparent, bioresistant and biocompatible separator positioned between the bioreporter and the sensor.

22. The device of claim 19, further comprising a polymer matrix encasing the bioreporter and enabling contact between the substance and the bioreporter.

23. The device of claim 22, wherein the polymer matrix is permeable to the substance.

24. The device of claim 20, wherein the sequence of the nucleic acid segment.

25. The device of claim 19, which further comprises a source of water and nutrients adapted to sustain the bioreporter.

26. An apparatus for detecting a substance which comprises:

(a) an integrated circuit including a phototransducer adapted to produce a signal in response to light;

(b) a bioreporter capable of metabolizing the substance and emitting light consequent to such metabolism, said reporter adapted to contact said substance; and

(c) a transparent, biocompatible, and bioresistant separator positioned between the phototransducer and the bioreporter.

27. The apparatus according to claim 26, wherein said bioreporter comprises a nucleic-acid sequence encoding a *lux* gene.

28. The apparatus according to claim 26, which further comprises a plastic matrix encasing the bioreporter and enabling contact between the substance and the bioreporter.

29. The apparatus according to claim 28, wherein the plastic matrix is permeable to the substance.

30. The apparatus according to claim 29, wherein the substance comprises a fluid.

31. The apparatus according to claim 26, in which the bioreporter comprises bacteria.

32. An apparatus for detecting the concentration of a substance, comprising:

(a) a substrate;

(b) *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44 capable of metabolizing a particular substance and to emit light in response to the metabolite;

(c) a selectively permeable container affixed to said substrate capable of holding said *Pseudomonas fluorescens* HK44, capable of allowing gas or fluid to reach said bioreporter, and capable of keeping ambient light from reaching said bioreporter;

(d) a layer of semiconducting material between said substrate and said container;

(e) a fluid and nutrient reservoir and microfluidic pump on said substrate;

(f) a complementary metal oxide on said substrate, including a photodiode operative to generate and a current in response to said light, a current to frequency converter, a digital counter, and a wireless transmitter; and,

(g) a central data collection station capable of receiving transmissions from said transmitter.

33. The apparatus according to claim 32, wherein the apparatus of step (f) is a complementary metal oxide integrated circuit.

34. The apparatus according to claim 32, wherein the layer of semiconducting material in step (d) is silicon nitride or silicon oxide.

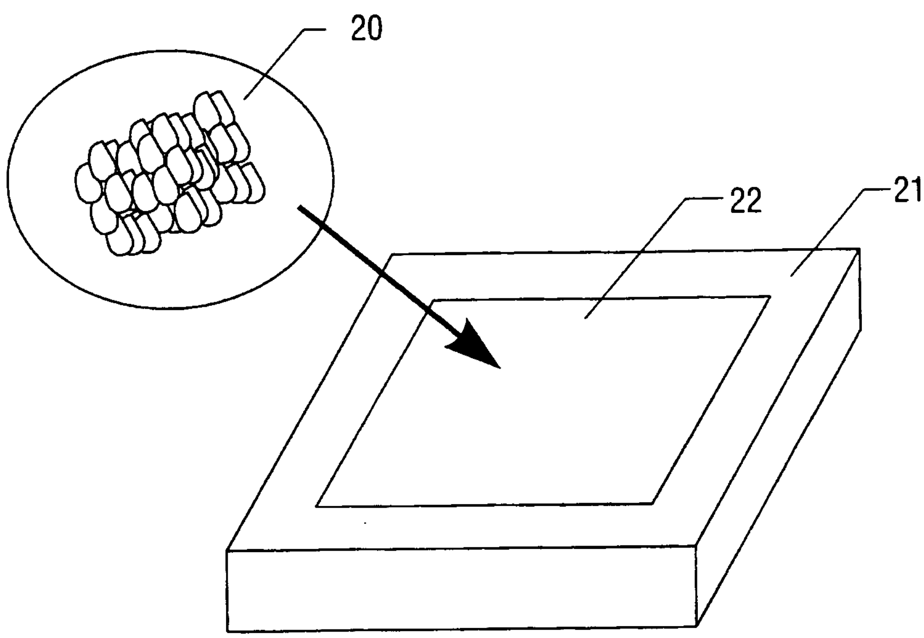


FIG. 1

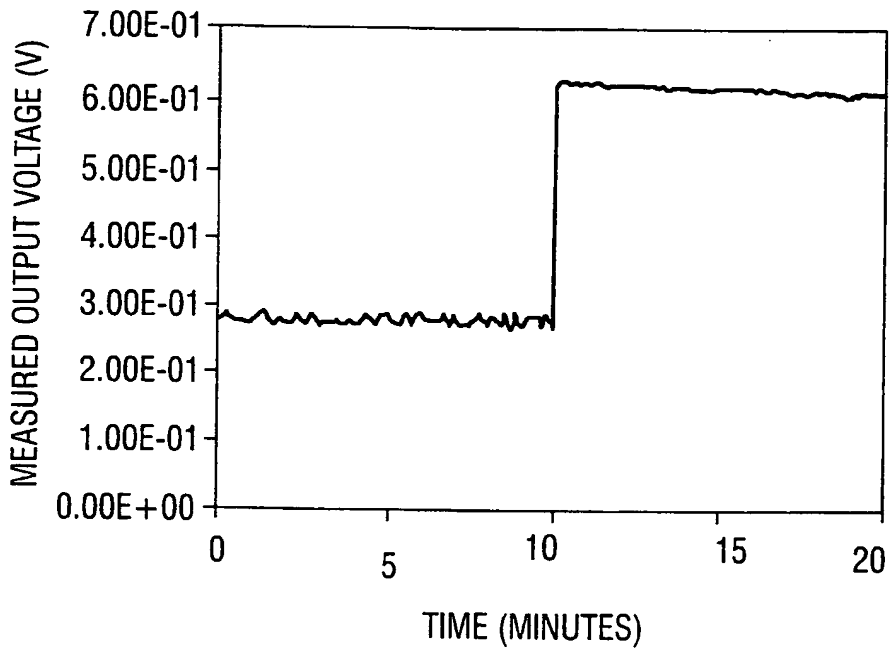

7.00E-01
6.00E-01
5.00E-01
4.00E-01
3.00E-01
2.00E-01
1.00E-01
0.00E+00
MEASURED OUTPUT VOLTAGE (V)
0
5
10
15
20
TIME (MINUTES)

FIG. 2

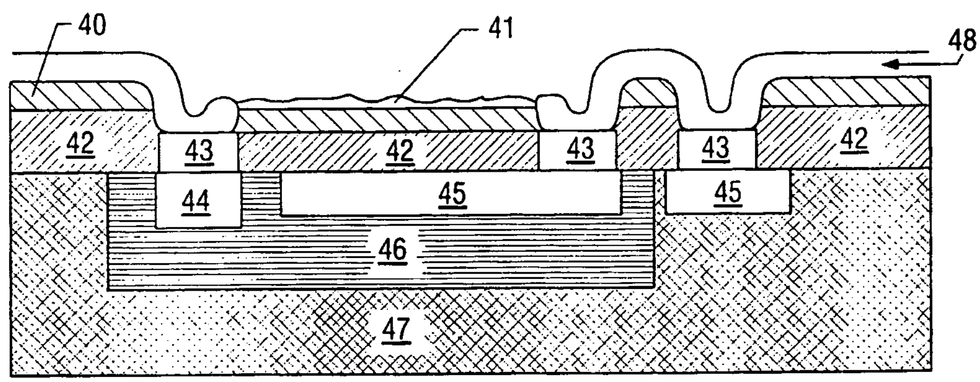


FIG. 3A

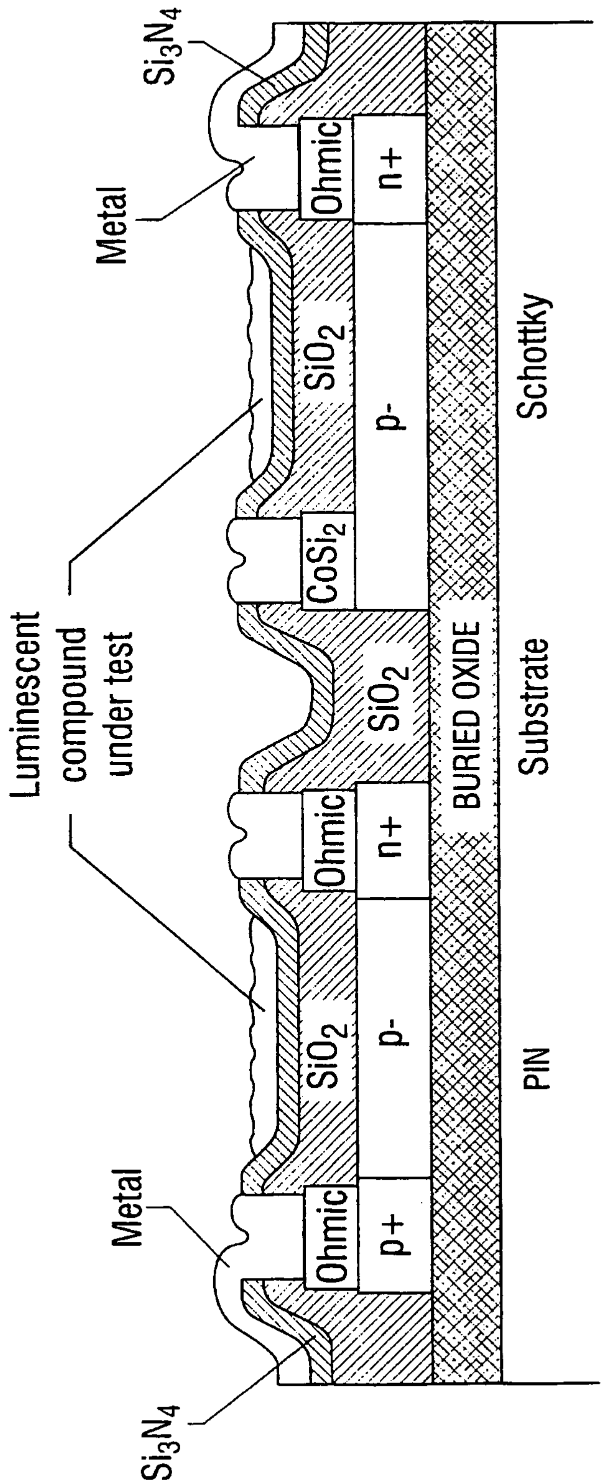

Si$_3$N$_4$
Metal
Luminescent compound under test
SiO$_2$
Ohmic
n+
p-
CoSi$_2$
BURIED OXIDE
Substrate
Schottky
PIN
p+

FIG. 3B

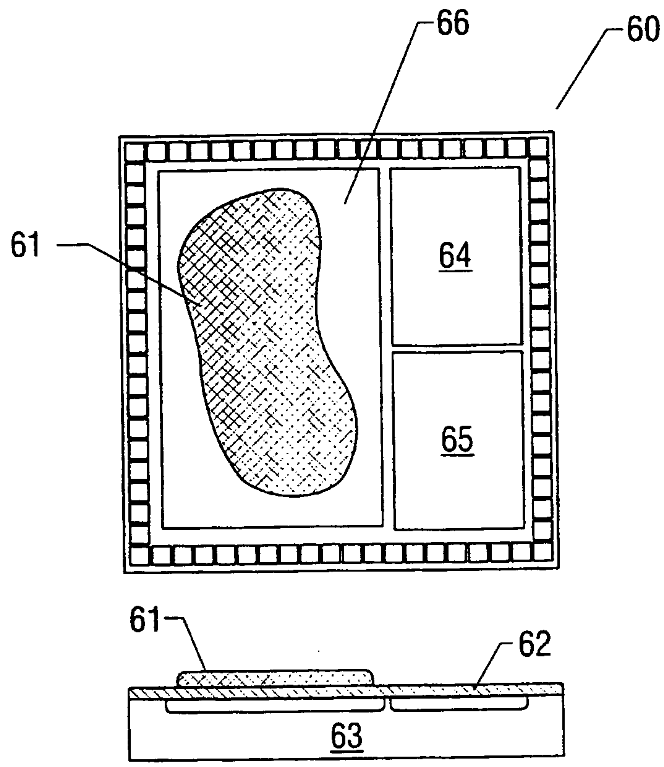


FIG. 4

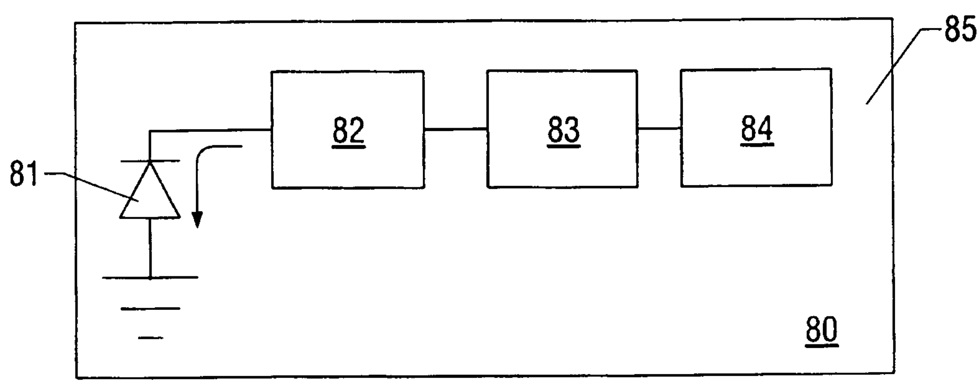


FIG. 5

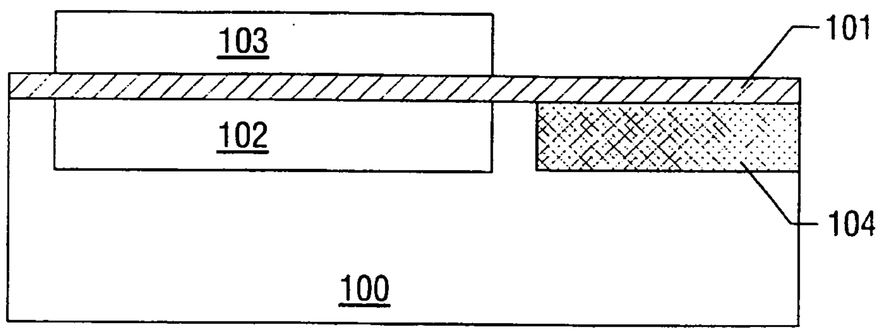


FIG. 6

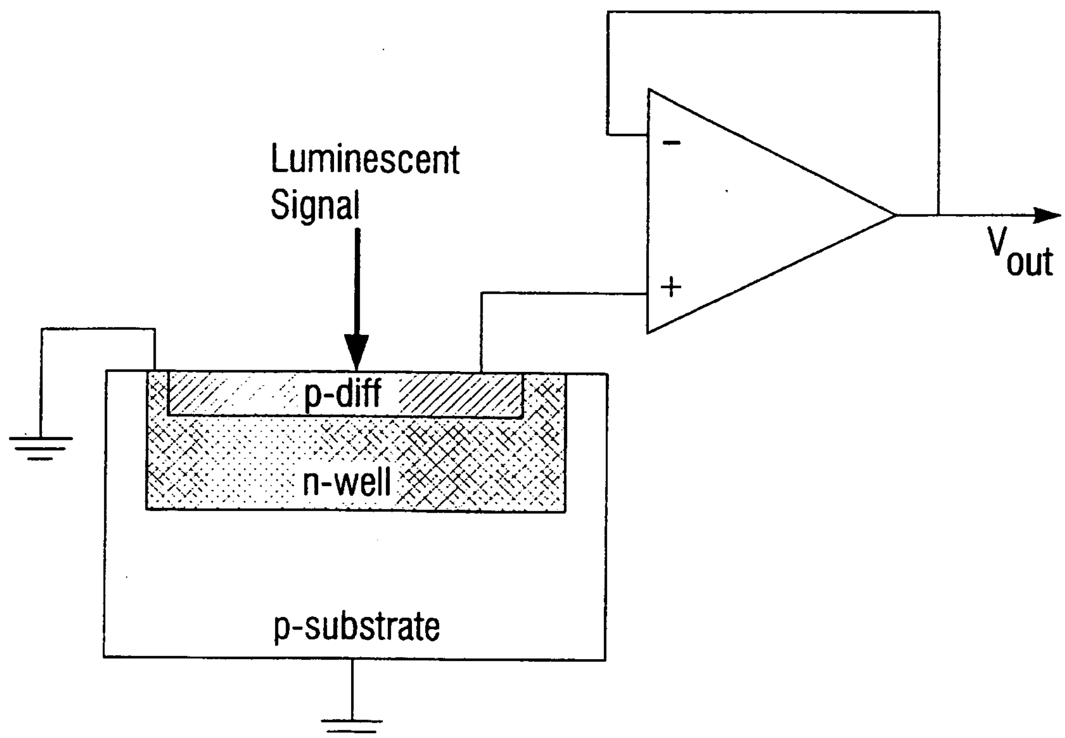


FIG. 7A

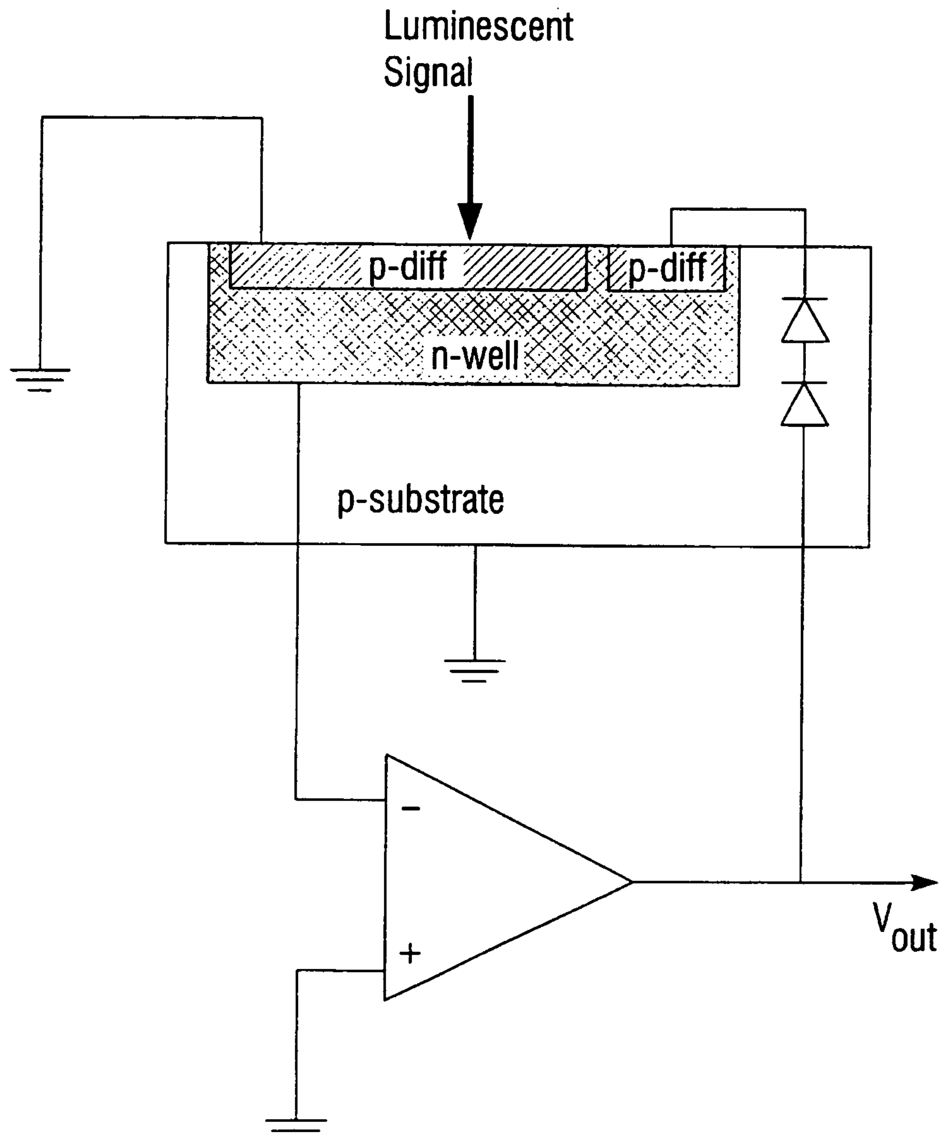


FIG. 7B

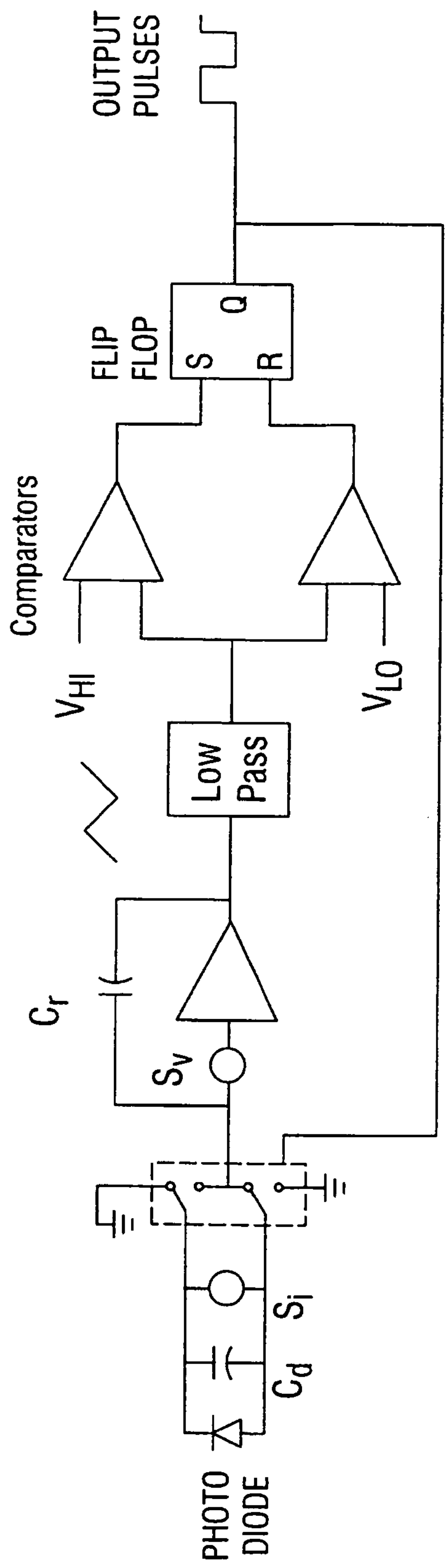

OUTPUT
PULSES
FLIP
FLOP
S
Q
R
Comparators
V_{HI}
V_{LO}
Low
Pass
C_r
S_v
S_i
C_d
PHOTO
DIODE

FIG. 7C

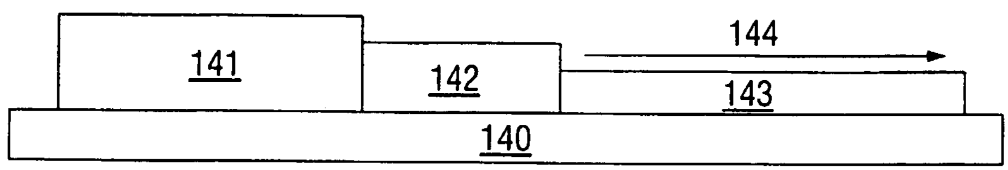


FIG. 8

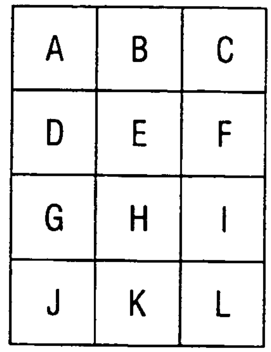


FIG. 9A

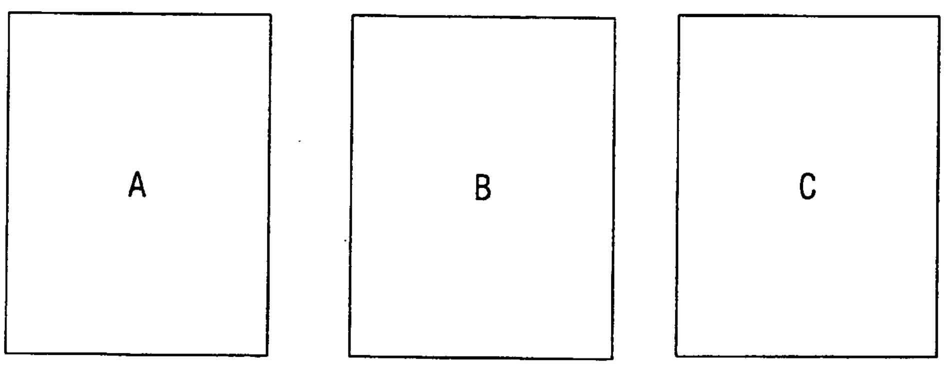


FIG. 9B

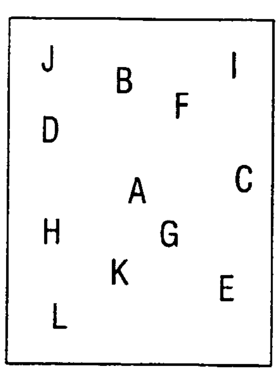


FIG. 9C

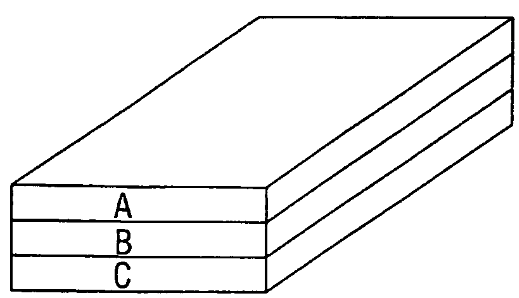


FIG. 9D

```
                                                          Synthesized Primer

         NheI                 I end of Tn5
5´-GGGCGCTAGCGAAATGTTGACTGTCTCTTGATCAGATCTTTCAATTCAGAAGAACTCG-3´
3´-CCCGCTGTGCCTTTACAACTTATGAGTATGAGAAGGAAAAAGTTAAGTCTTCTTGAGC-5´
       **               * *****  ******** *

                                                          KmrGene Sequence
```

```
                                                          Synthesized Primer

     EcoRI  0 end of Tn5     XbaI    NotI
5´-CGAATTCTGACTCTTATACACAAGTTCTAGATTGCGGCCGCTTGGTTAAAAAATGAGC-3´
3´-GATAAGAAAACTAAATATTCCCTAAAAGCGCTAAGCCGGATAACCAATTTTTTACTCG-5´
     * * ** *****     **** *  *** ***A**    **

                                                          KmrGene Sequence
```

Primers for pLJS

```
                                              Synthesized Primer
              BssHII  SpeI XbaI     NheI AvrII  KpnI
        5´-CCAAGCGCGCAACTAGTCTAGACTAAAGCTAGCCTAGGCTGGGATCC-3´
        3´-GGTTCGCGCGTTAATTGGAGTGATTTCCCTTGTTTTCGGACCC-5´
                       * **  *****  * ** ****   *
   pBScript KS Gene Sequence

                             *** ***
           5´-TCCAATTCGCCCTATAGTGAGTCGTATTACGCGCGCTCAC-3´
        3´-CACGAGGTTAAGCGGGATCCGATCGAGCATAATGCGCGCGAGTG-5´
           SacI         AvrII NHE I         BssHII

                                              Synthesized Primer
```

FIG. 10B

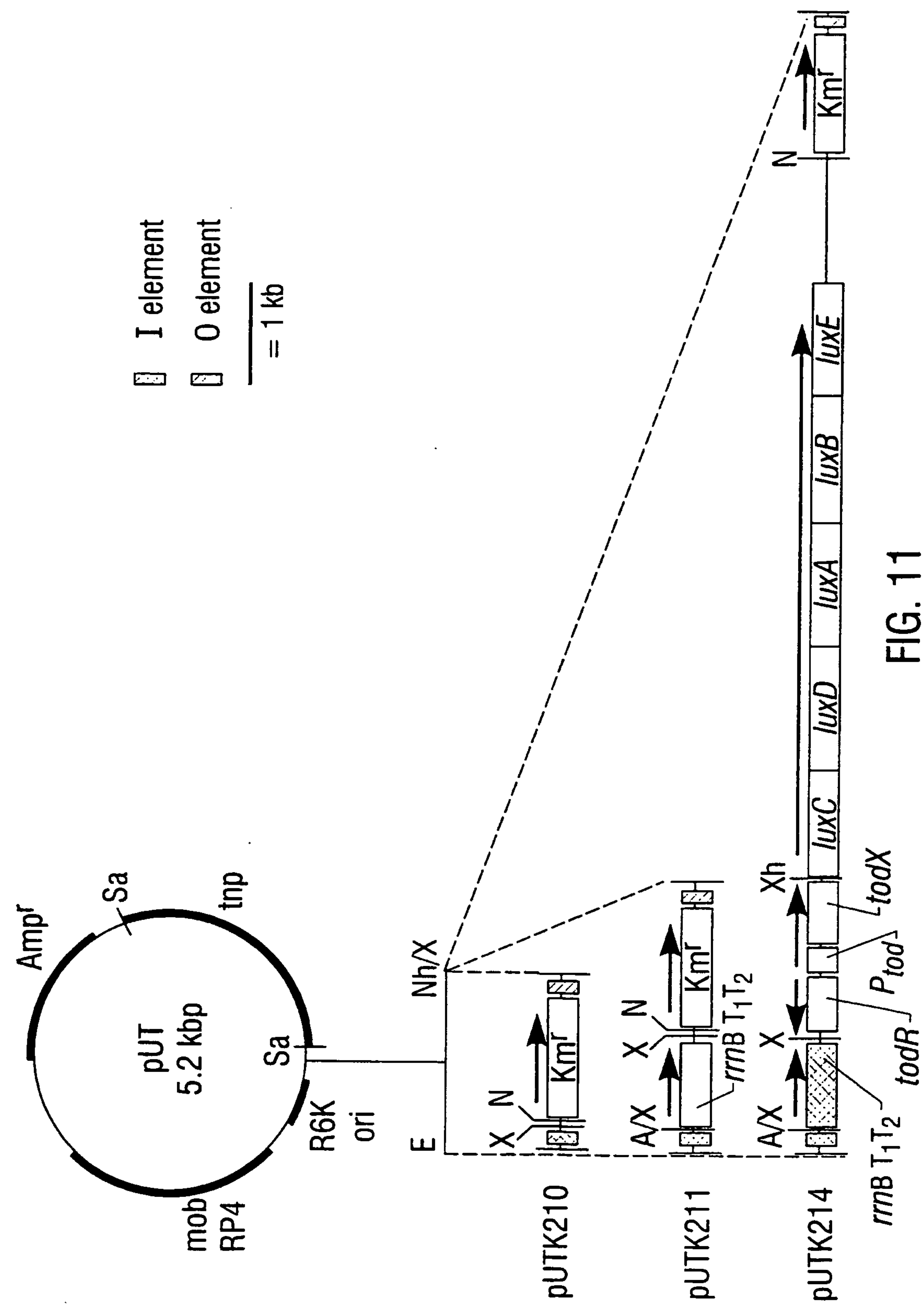

Amp^r
Sa
tnp
pUT
5.2 kbp
Sa
R6K
ori
mob
RP4
E
Nh/X
X N
Km^r
A/X
X N
rrnB T_1T_2
A/X
X
Xh
todR
P_{tod}
todX
luxC
luxD
luxA
luxB
luxE
N
pUTK210
pUTK211
pUTK214
rrnB T_1T_2
I element
O element
= 1 kb

FIG. 11

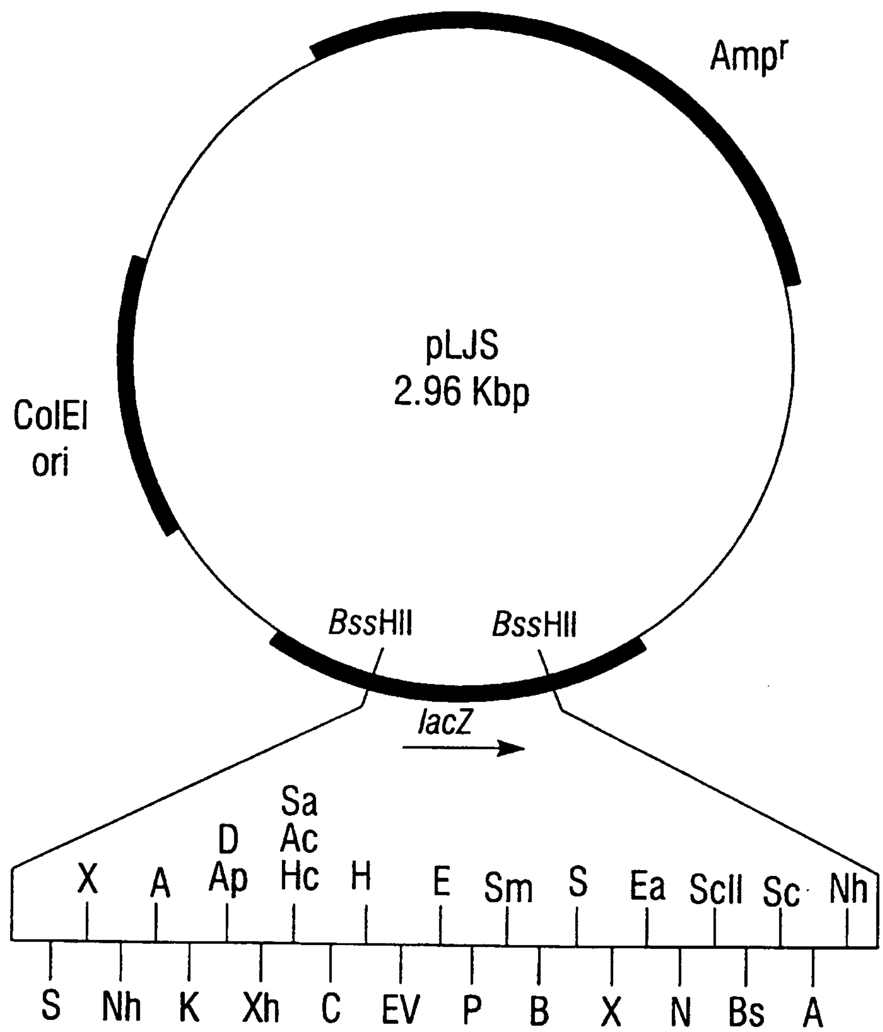

Amp^r
pLJS
2.96 Kbp
ColEI
ori
BssHII
BssHII
lacZ
X
A
D
Ap
Sa
Ac
Hc
H
E
Sm
S
Ea
ScII
Sc
Nh
S
Nh
K
Xh
C
EV
P
B
X
N
Bs
A

FIG. 12

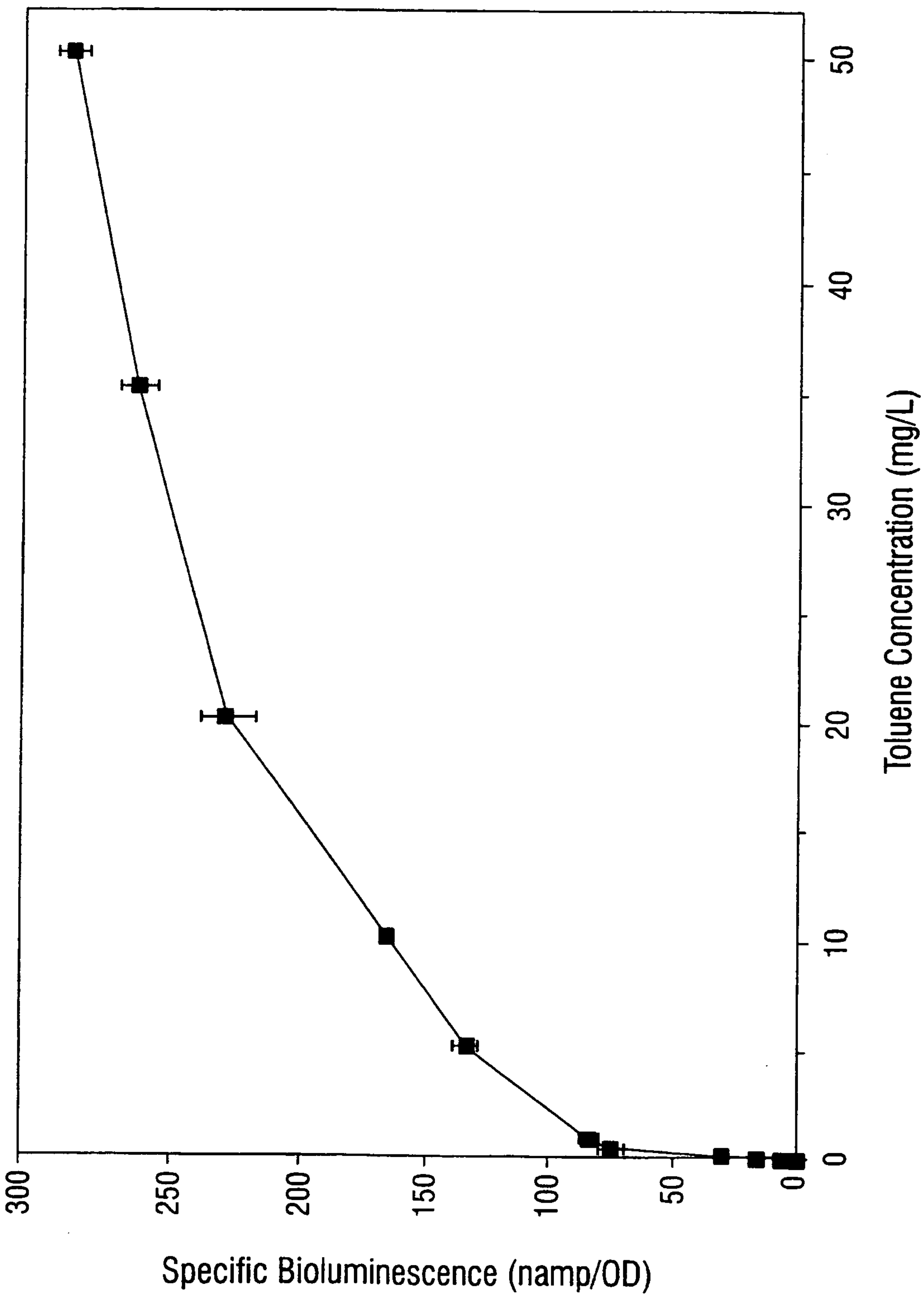

Specific Bioluminescence (namp/OD)
0
50
100
150
200
250
300
Toluene Concentration (mg/L)
0
10
20
30
40
50

FIG. 13

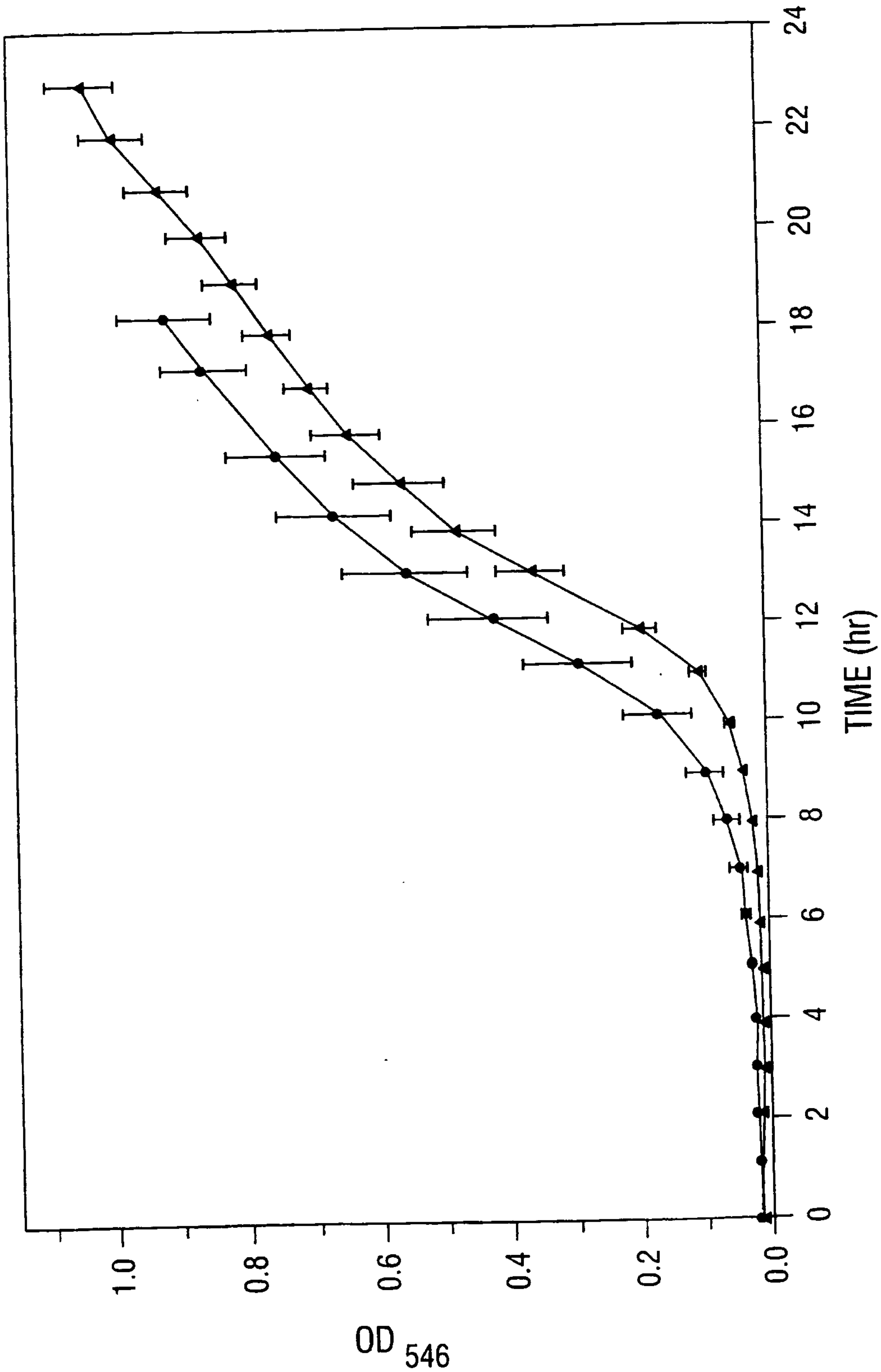


FIG. 14

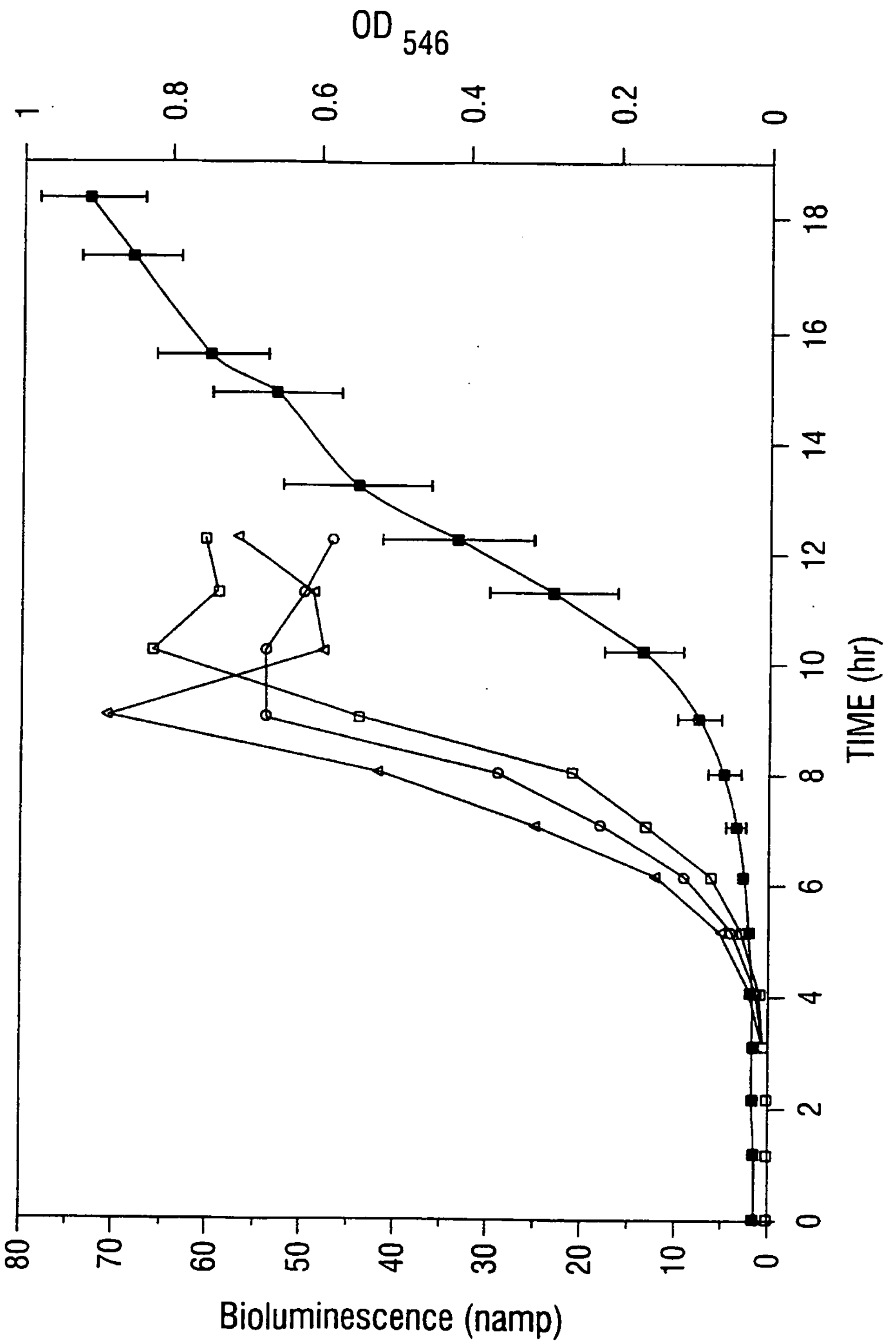

OD 546
1
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
18
TIME (hr)
80
70
60
50
40
30
20
10
0
Bioluminescence (namp)

FIG. 15

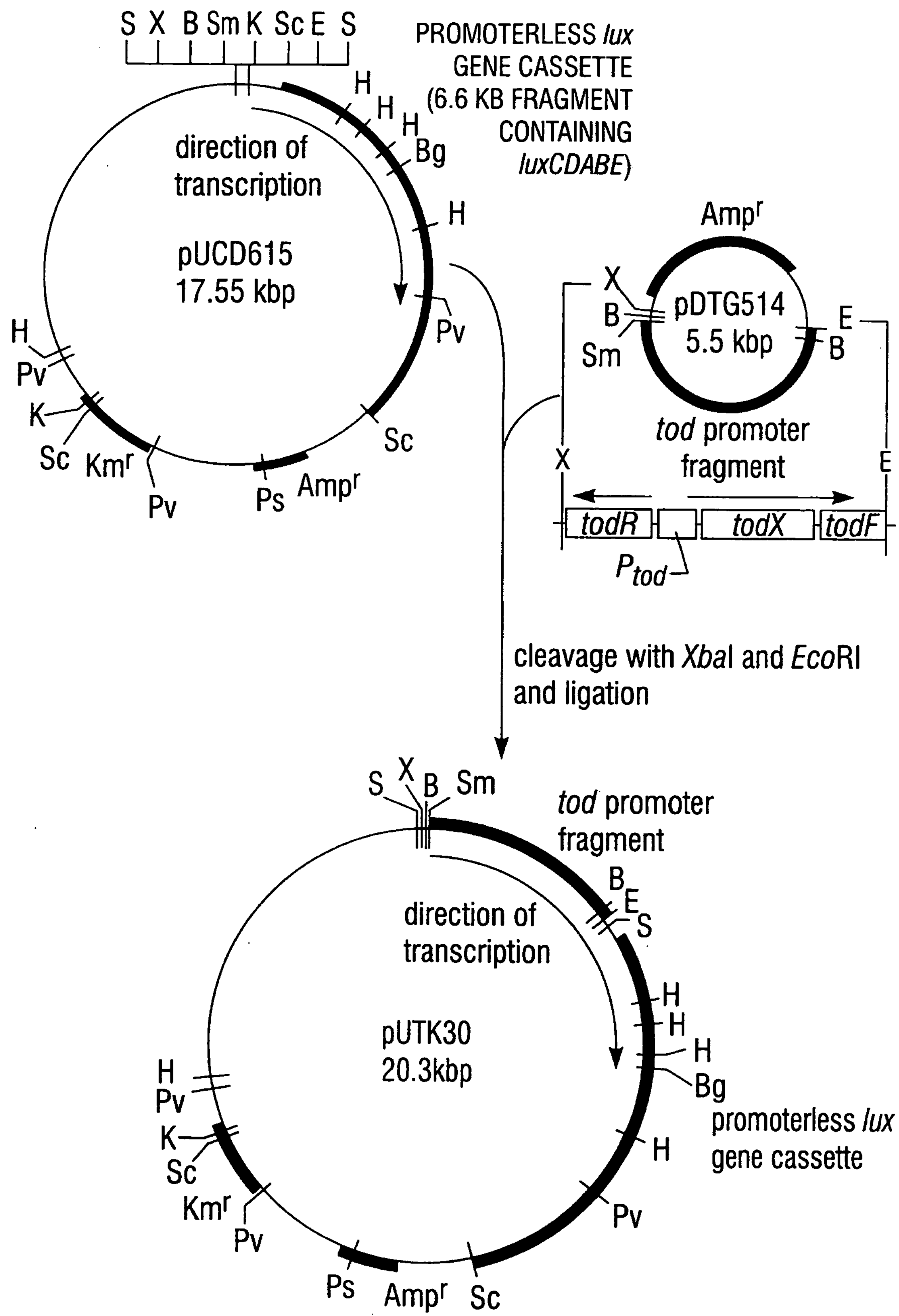

S X B Sm K Sc E S
PROMOTERLESS lux GENE CASSETTE (6.6 KB FRAGMENT CONTAINING luxCDABE)
H
H
H
Bg
H
direction of transcription
pUCD615
17.55 kbp
Pv
H
Pv
K
Sc
Kmr
Pv
Ps
Ampr
Sc
Ampr
X
B
Sm
pDTG514
5.5 kbp
E
B
tod promoter fragment
X
E
todR
todX
todF
Ptod
cleavage with XbaI and EcoRI and ligation
S X B Sm
tod promoter fragment
B
E
S
direction of transcription
pUTK30
20.3kbp
H
H
H
Bg
promoterless lux gene cassette
H
Pv
H
Pv
K
Sc
Kmr
Pv
Ps
Ampr
Sc

FIG. 16

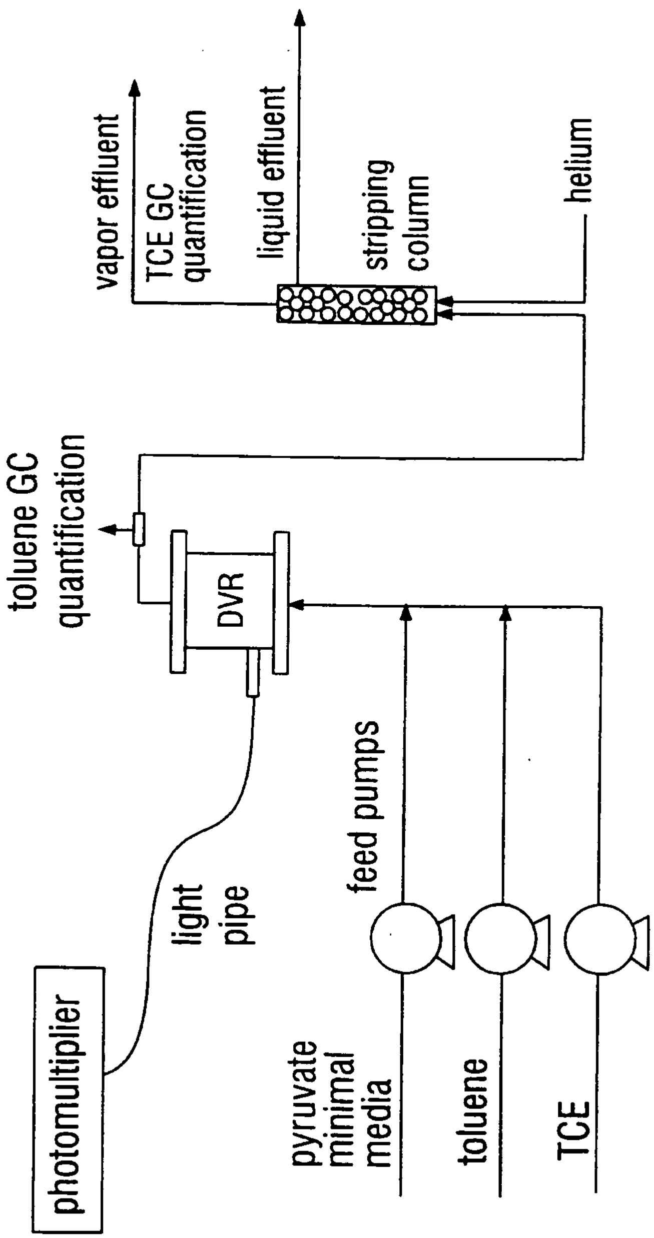
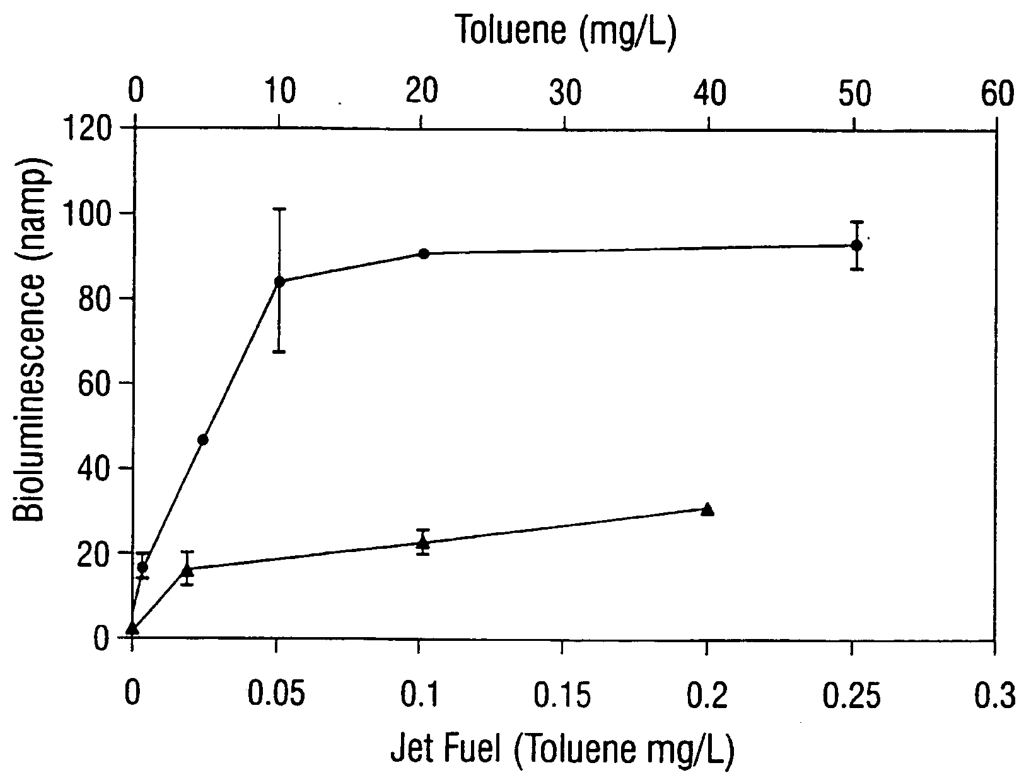
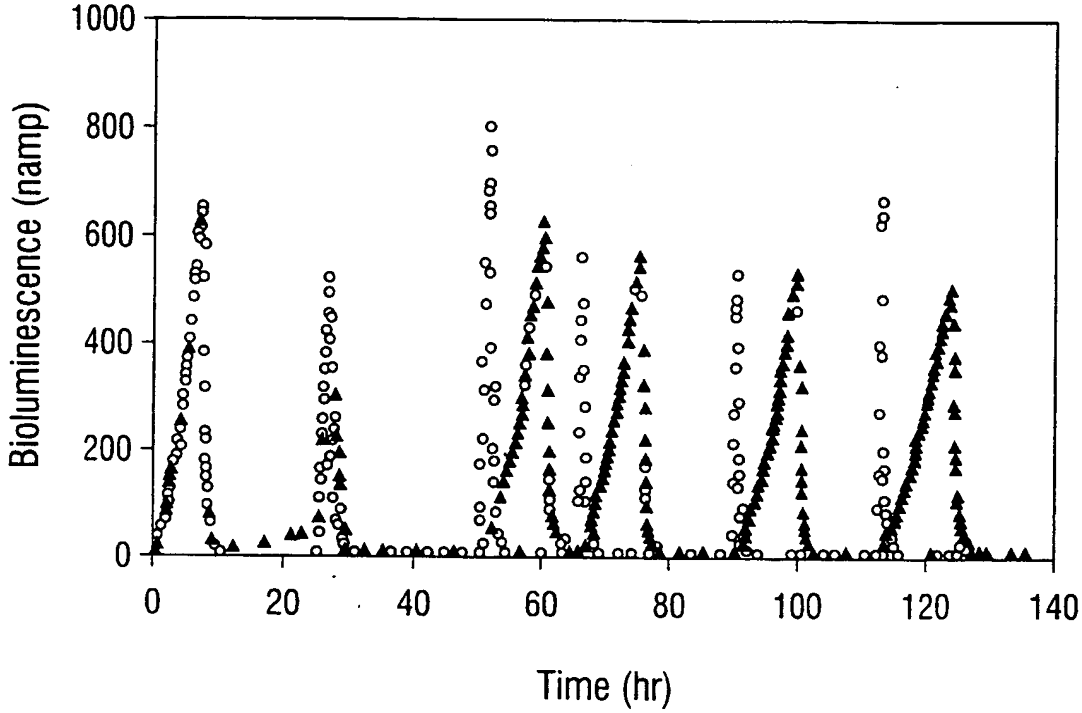

vapor effluent
TCE GC quantification
liquid effluent
stripping column
helium
toluene GC quantification
DVR
light pipe
photomultiplier
feed pumps
pyruvate minimal media
toluene
TCE

FIG. 17



Toluene (mg/L)
0
10
20
30
40
50
60
120
100
80
60
40
20
0
Bioluminescence (namp)
0
0.05
0.1
0.15
0.2
0.25
0.3
Jet Fuel (Toluene mg/L)

FIG. 18



1000
800
600
400
200
0
Bioluminescence (namp)
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
140
Time (hr)

FIG. 19

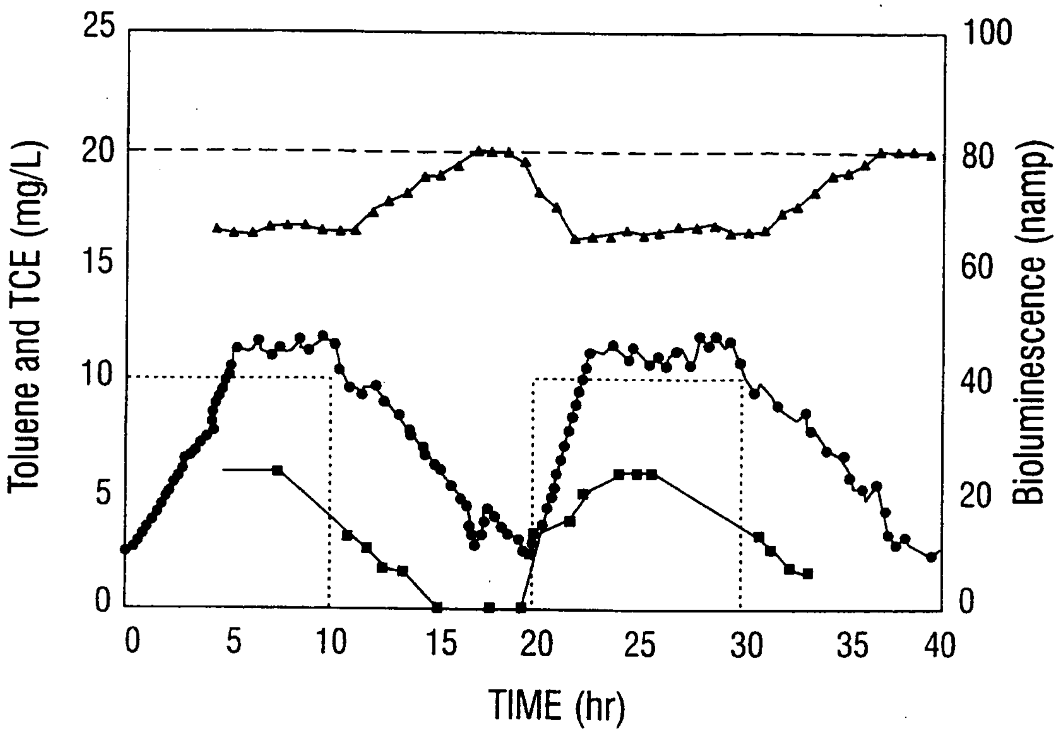

25
20
15
10
5
0
100
80
60
40
20
0
Toluene and TCE (mg/L)
Bioluminescence (namp)
0
5
10
15
20
25
30
35
40
TIME (hr)

FIG. 20

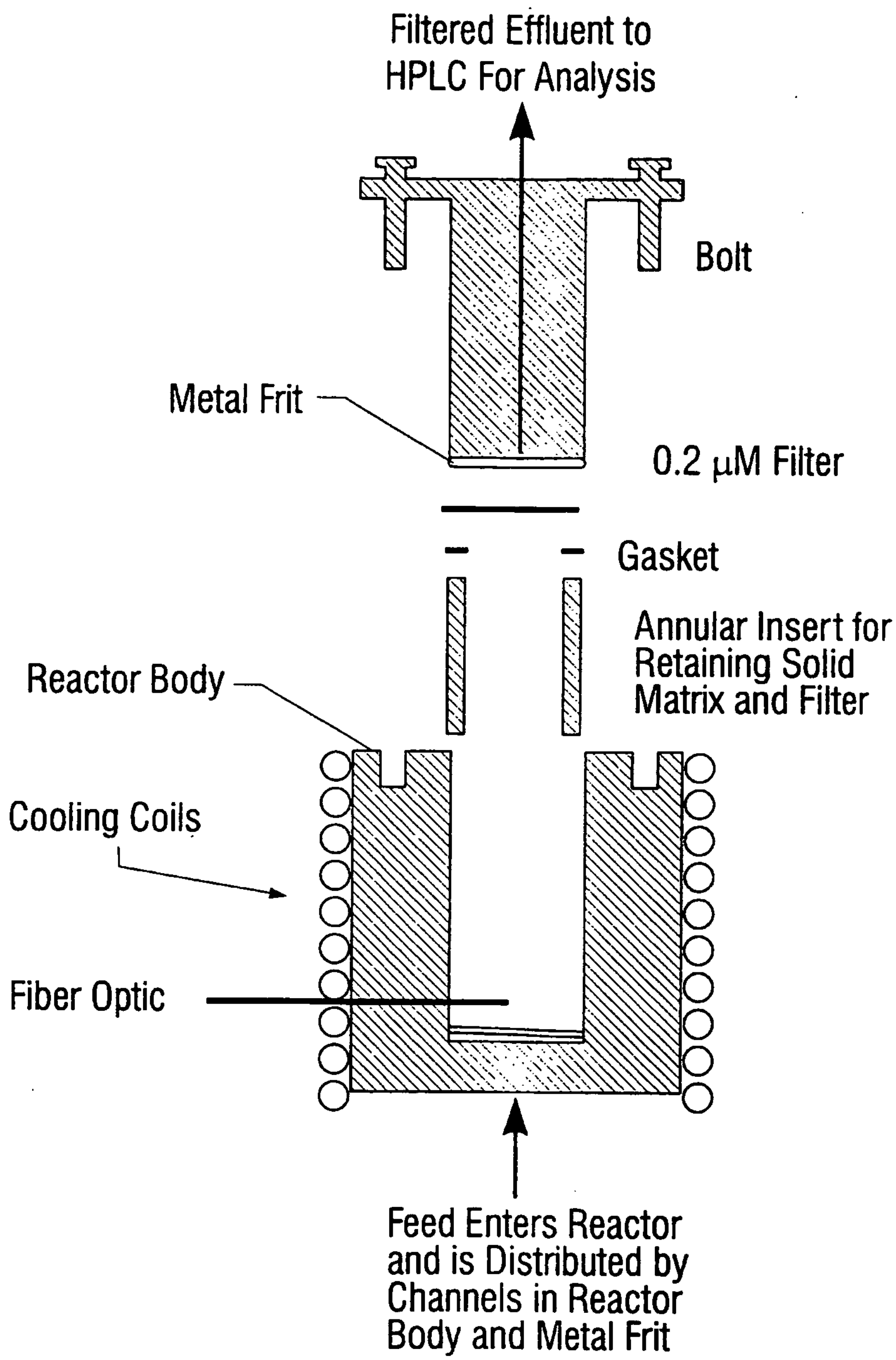
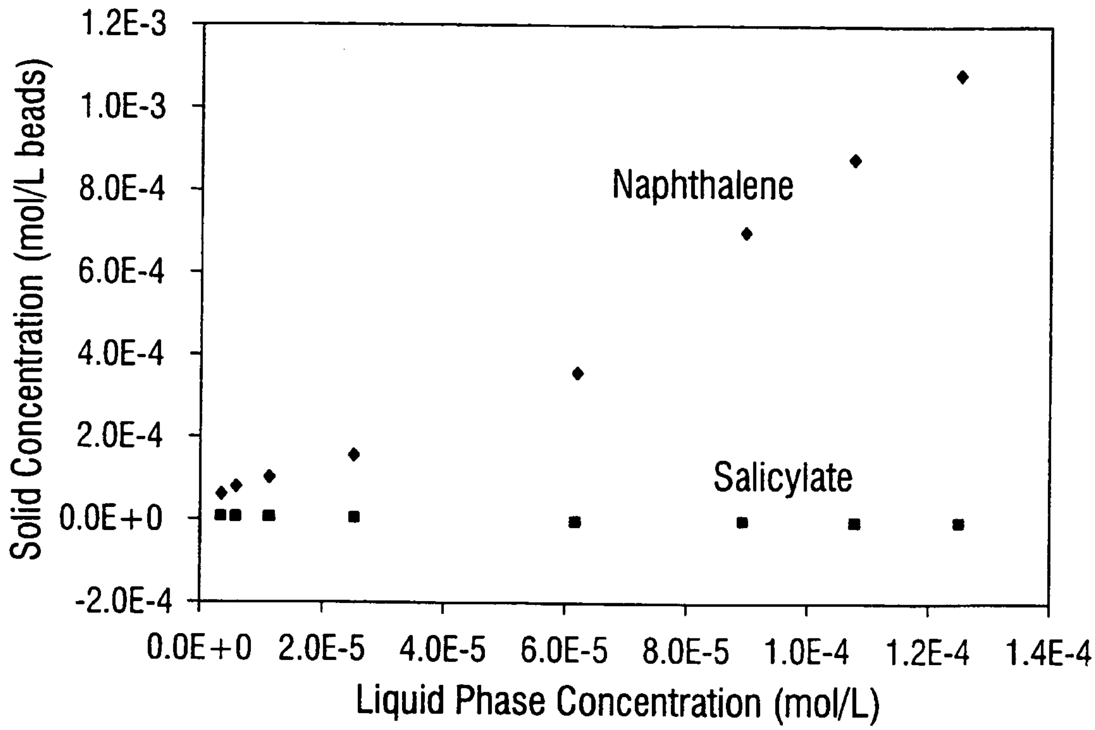

Filtered Effluent to
HPLC For Analysis
Bolt
Metal Frit
0.2 μM Filter
Gasket
Annular Insert for
Retaining Solid
Matrix and Filter
Reactor Body
Cooling Coils
Fiber Optic
Feed Enters Reactor
and is Distributed by
Channels in Reactor
Body and Metal Frit

FIG. 21



Solid Concentration (mol/L beads)
1.2E-3
1.0E-3
8.0E-4
6.0E-4
4.0E-4
2.0E-4
0.0E+0
-2.0E-4
Naphthalene
Salicylate
0.0E+0
2.0E-5
4.0E-5
6.0E-5
8.0E-5
1.0E-4
1.2E-4
1.4E-4
Liquid Phase Concentration (mol/L)

FIG. 22

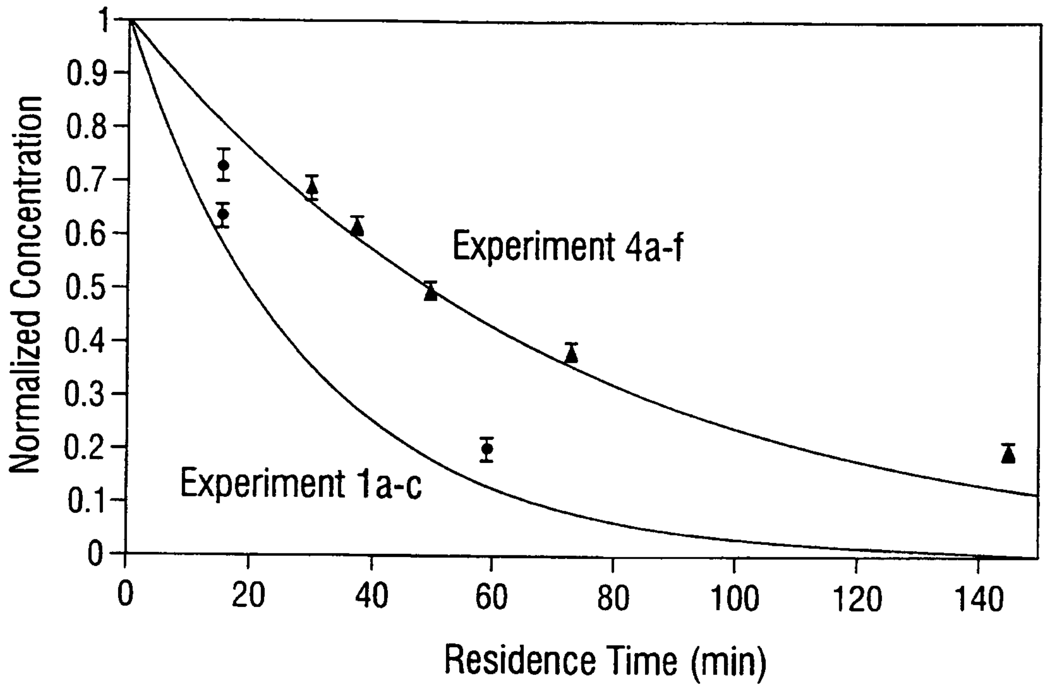

Normalized Concentration
1
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0.1
0
Experiment 4a-f
Experiment 1a-c
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
140
Residence Time (min)

FIG. 23

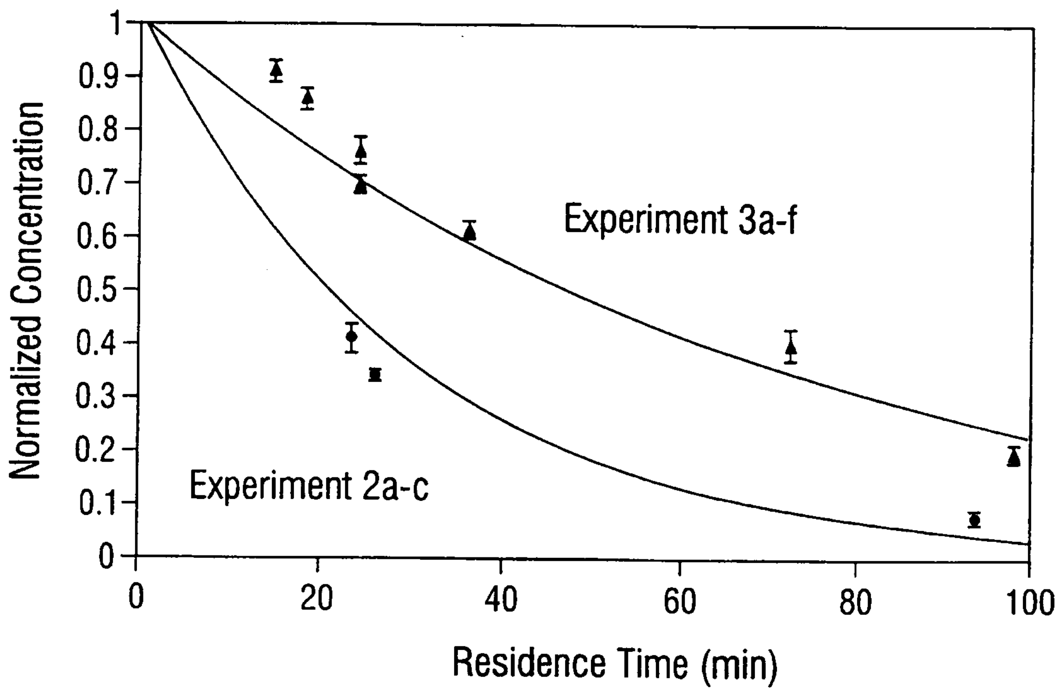

Normalized Concentration
1
0.9
0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0.1
0
Experiment 3a-f
Experiment 2a-c
0
20
40
60
80
100
Residence Time (min)

FIG. 24

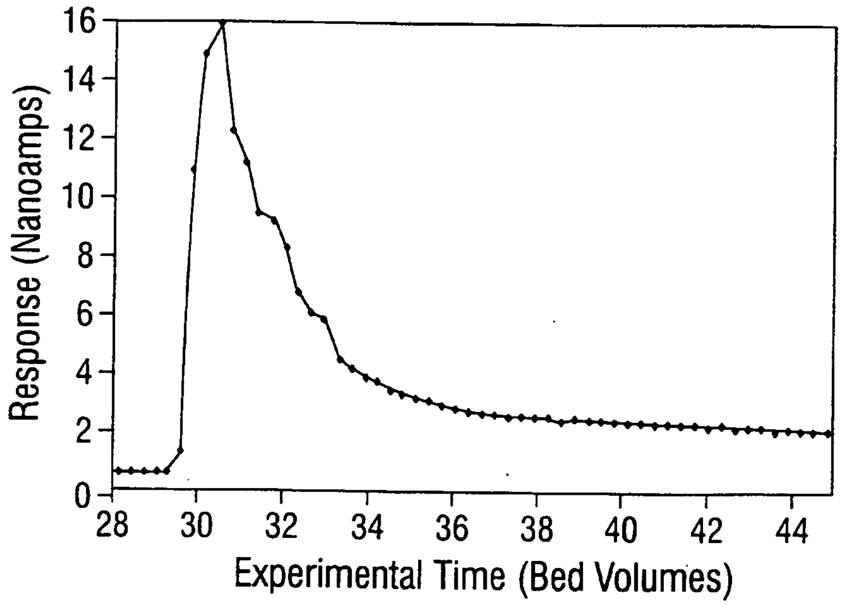
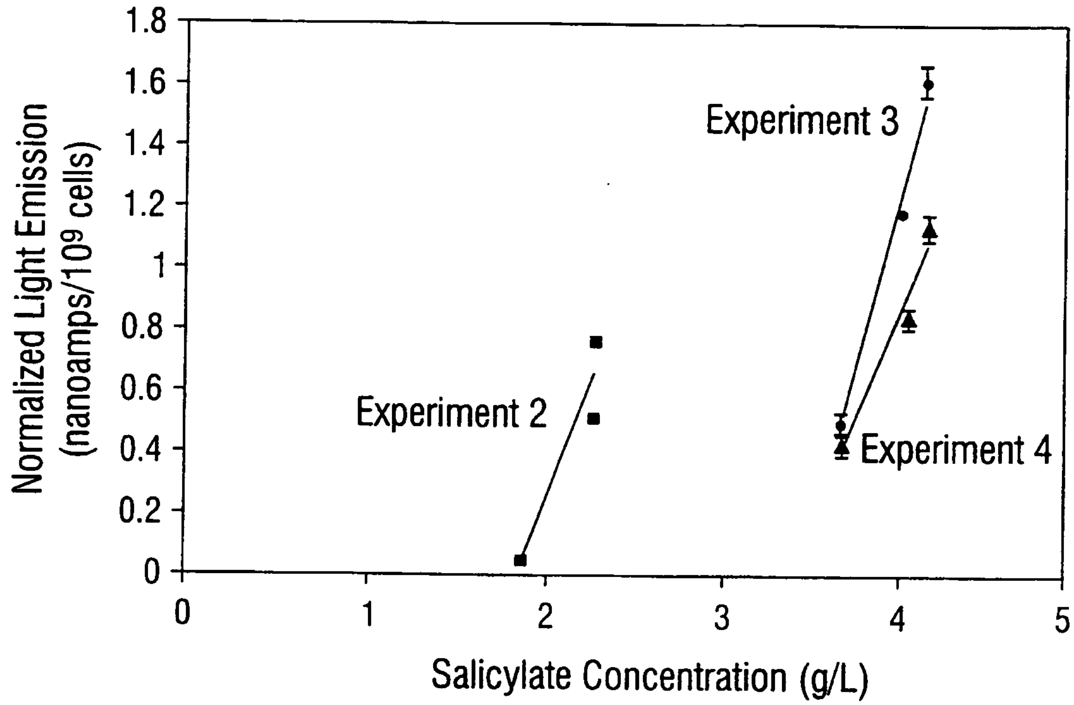

Response (Nanoamps)
0
2
4
6
8
10
12
14
16
28
30
32
34
36
38
40
42
44
Experimental Time (Bed Volumes)

FIG. 25



Normalized Light Emission (nanoamps/10⁹ cells)
1.8
1.6
1.4
1.2
1
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0
Experiment 3
Experiment 2
Experiment 4
0
1
2
3
4
5
Salicylate Concentration (g/L)

FIG. 26

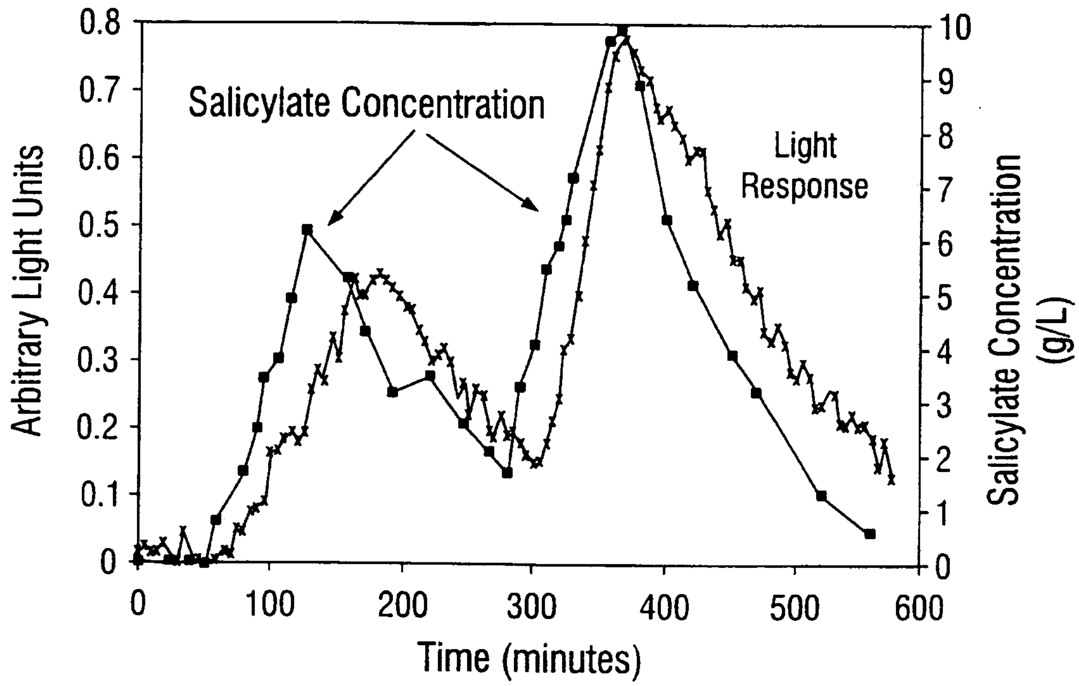

0.8
0.7
0.6
0.5
0.4
0.3
0.2
0.1
0
Arbitrary Light Units
Salicylate Concentration
Light
Response
10
9
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
0
Salicylate Concentration
(g/L)
0
100
200
300
400
500
600
Time (minutes)

FIG. 27

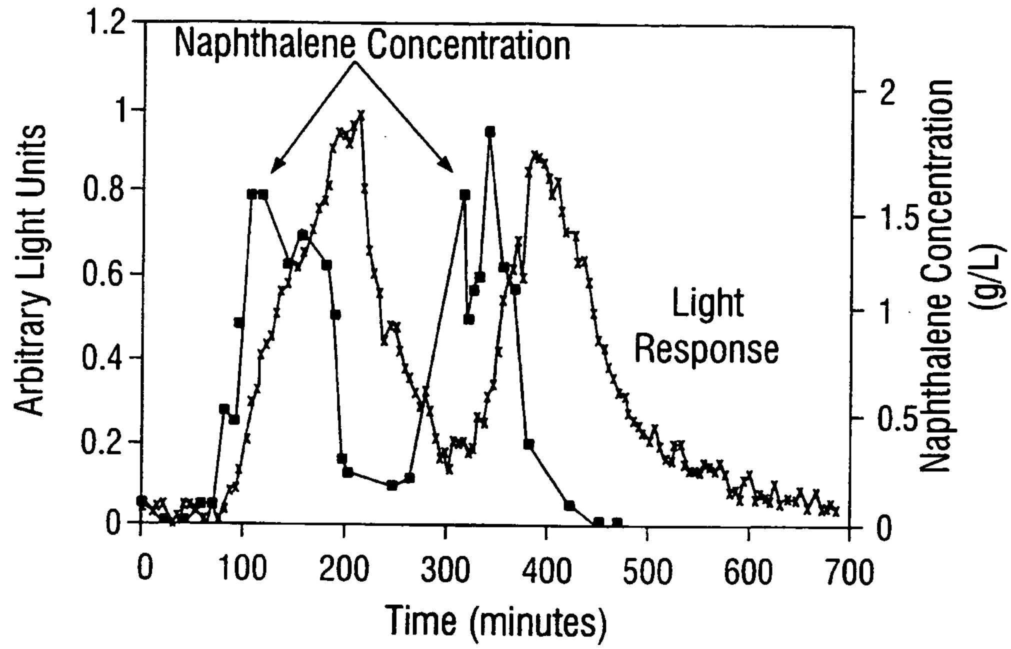

Naphthalene Concentration
Light Response
Arbitrary Light Units
Naphthalene Concentration (g/L)
Time (minutes)
1.2
1
0.8
0.6
0.4
0.2
0
2
1.5
1
0.5
0
0
100
200
300
400
500
600
700

FIG.28

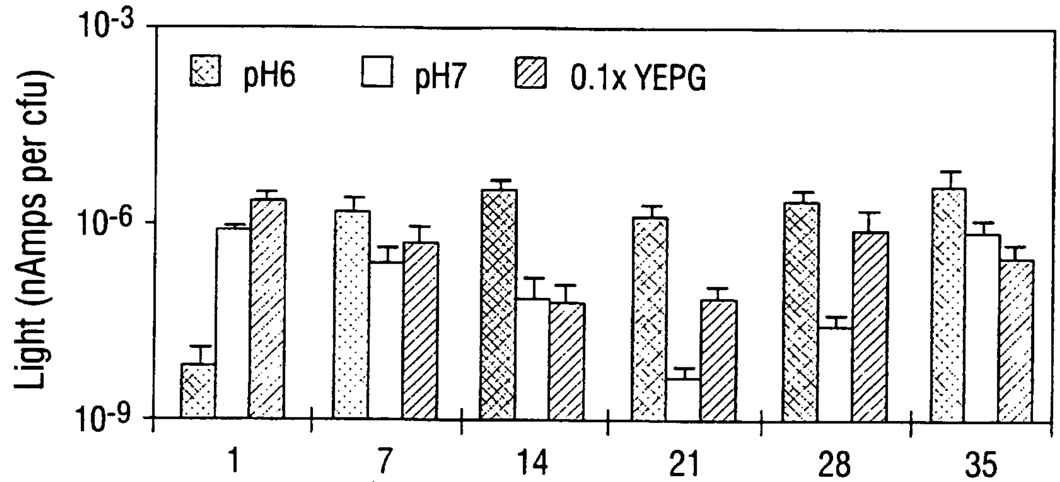


FIG. 29A

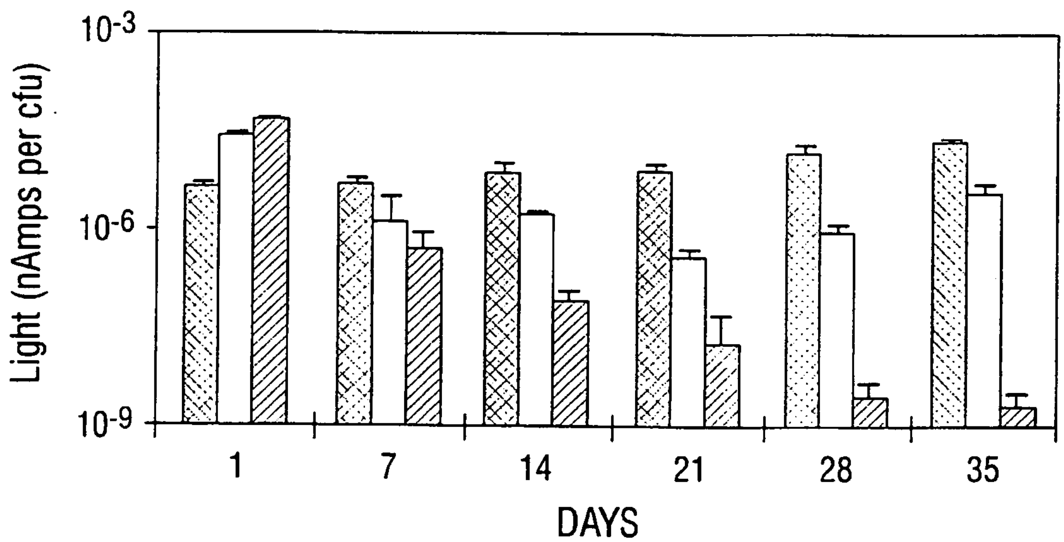


FIG. 29B

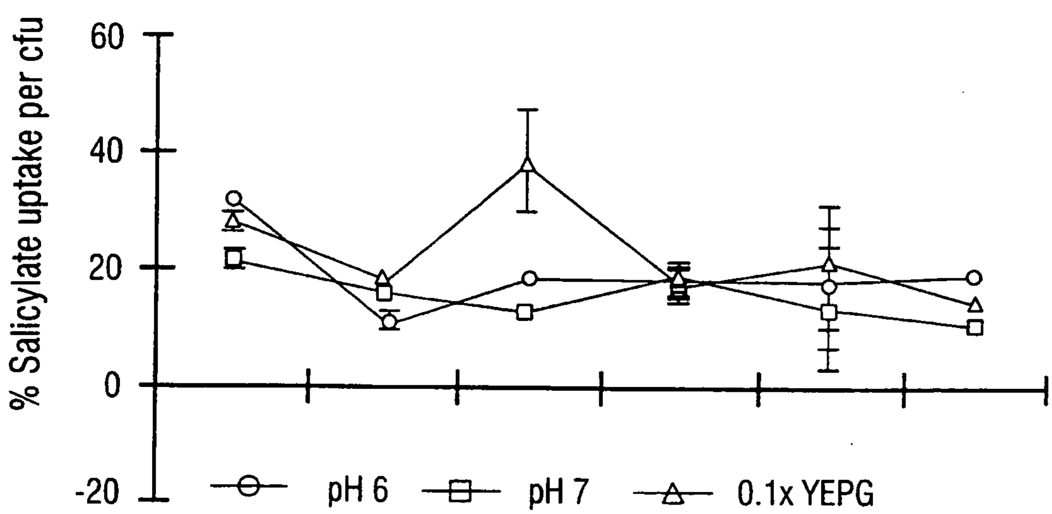


FIG. 30A

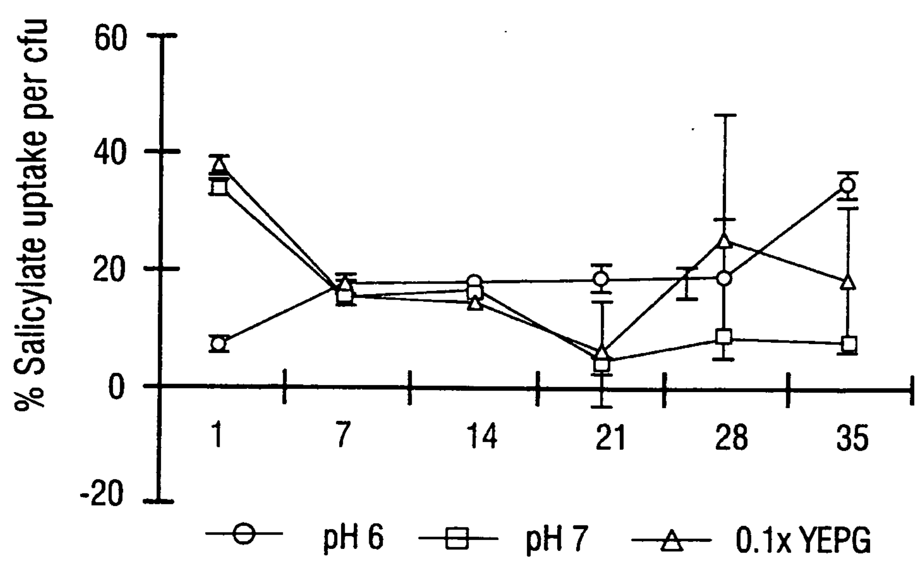

% Salicylate uptake per cfu
60
40
20
0
-20
1
7
14
21
28
35
pH 6
pH 7
0.1x YEPG

FIG. 30B

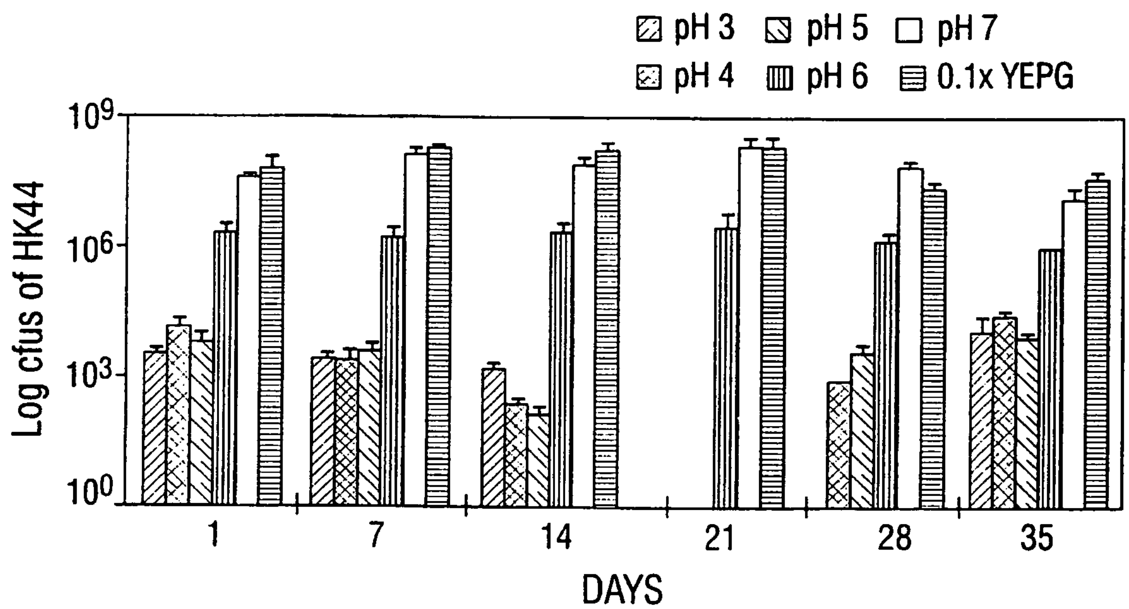

pH 3
pH 5
pH 7
pH 4
pH 6
0.1x YEPG
10^9
10^6
10^3
10^0
Log cfus of HK44
1
7
14
21
28
35
DAYS

FIG. 31

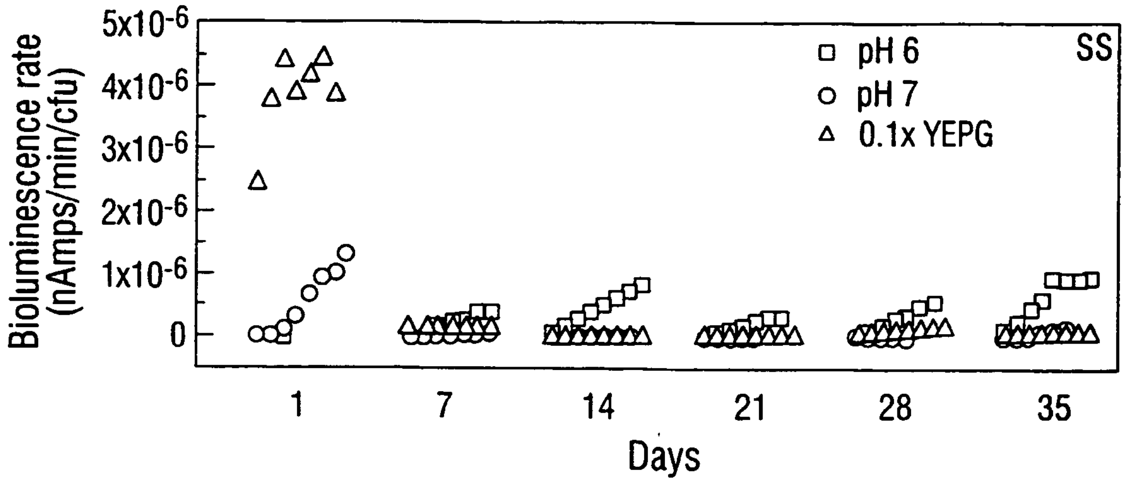


FIG. 32A

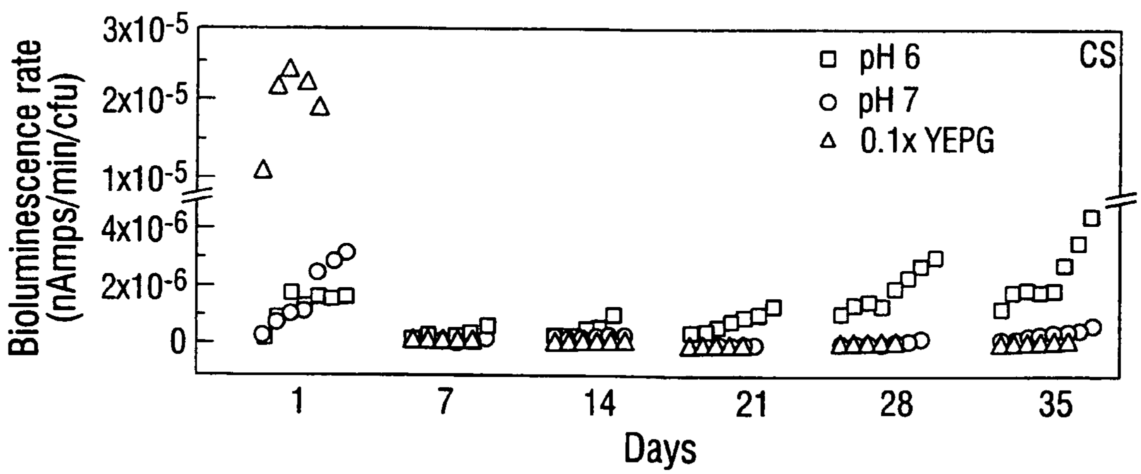


FIG. 32B

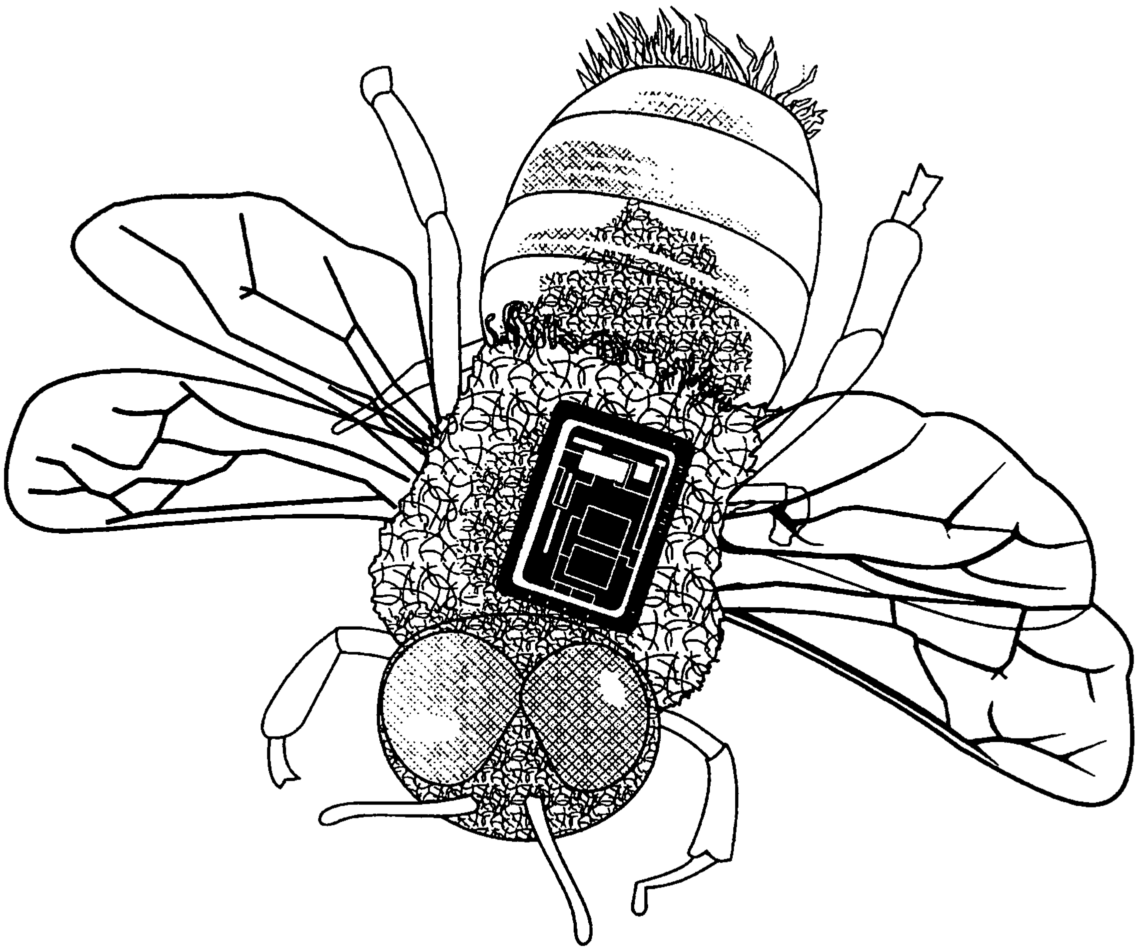


FIG. 33

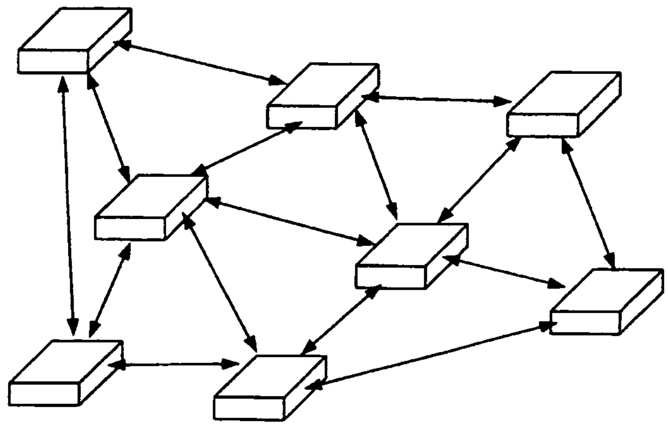


FIG. 34

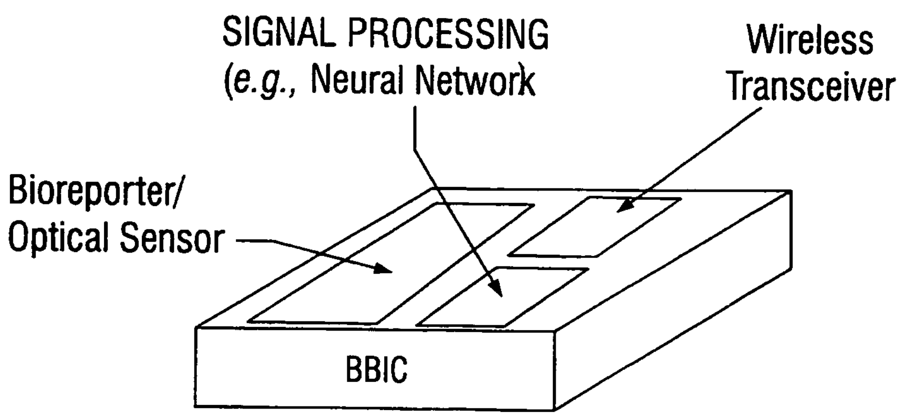

SIGNAL PROCESSING
(e.g., Neural Network
Wireless
Transceiver
Bioreporter/
Optical Sensor
BBIC

FIG. 35

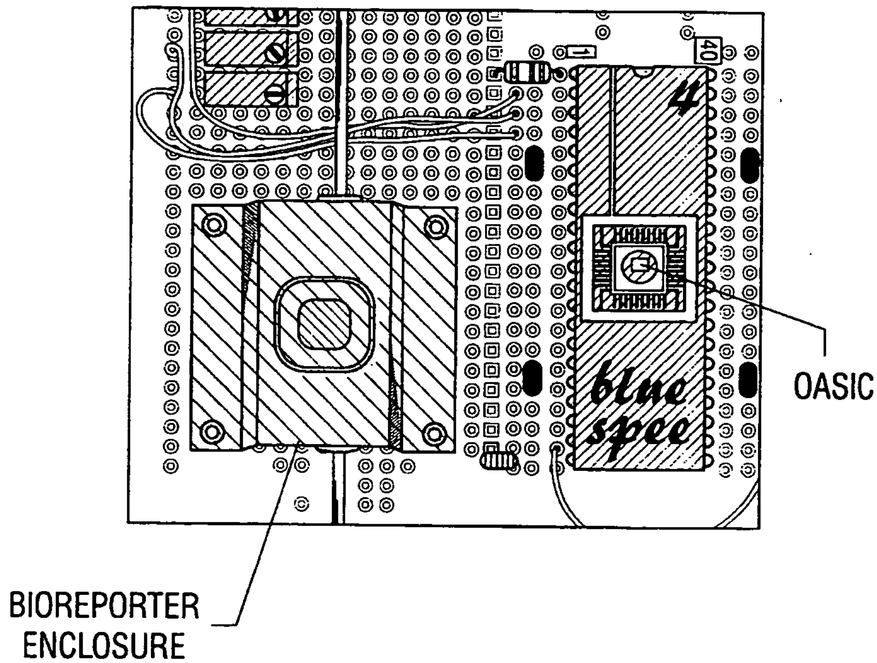


FIG. 36A

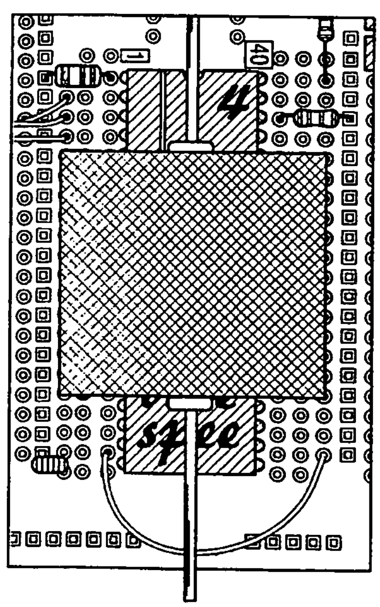


FIG. 36B

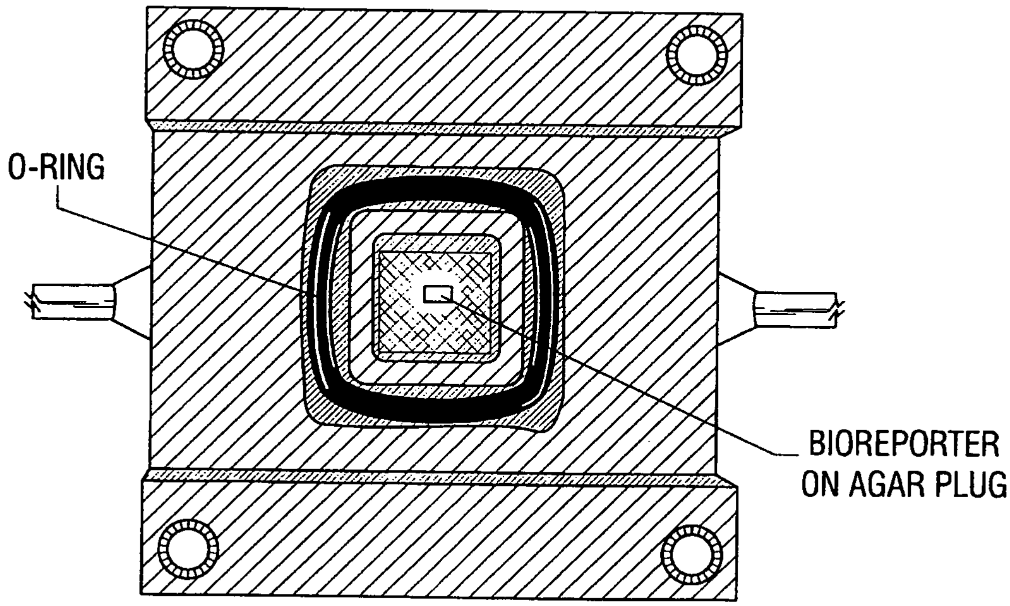


FIG. 36C

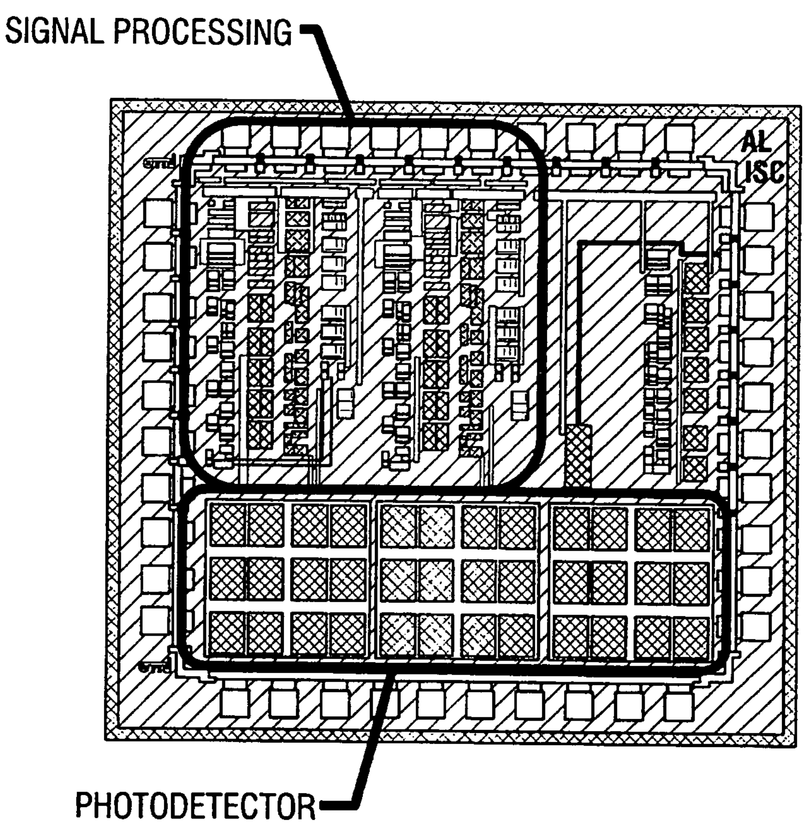


FIG. 37

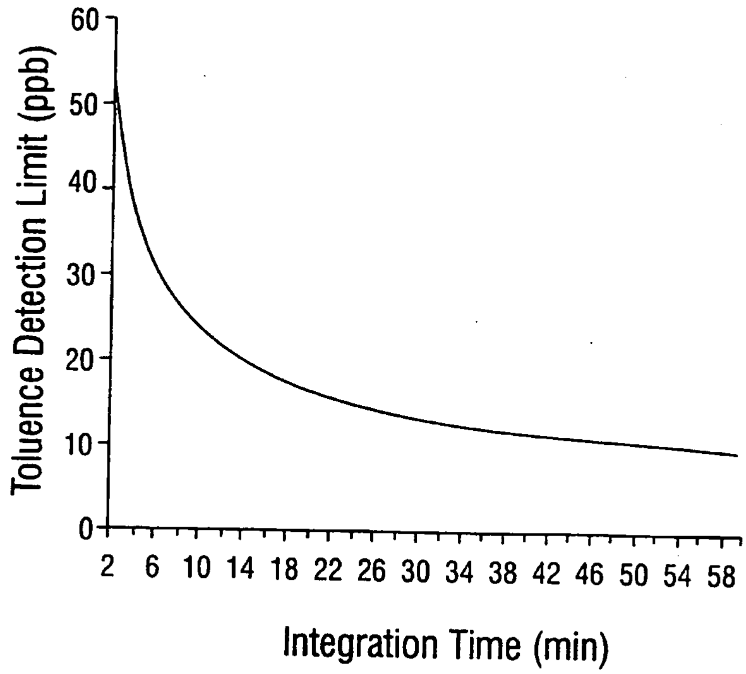

60
50
40
30
20
10
0
Toluence Detection Limit (ppb)
2 6 10 14 18 22 26 30 34 38 42 46 50 54 58
Integration Time (min)

FIG. 38

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/US 98/25295

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 G01N21/76

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 G01N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 97 12030 A (NANOGEN) 3 April 1997 see abstract see page 8, line 35 - page 9, line 9 see page 10, line 25 - line 27 see page 13, line 4 - line 15 see page 17, line 34 - page 18, line 20 see page 24, line 1 - line 16 see page 27, line 30 - page 28, line 16 see page 32, line 1 - line 17 see page 36, line 11 - last line	1-3,6, 15-17, 19-24, 26,28-30
A	see figures 2A,2B,6,7 --- -/--	13,32

[X] Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

[X] Patent family members are listed in annex.

° Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing of the international search report
30 March 1999	13/04/1999

Name and mailing address of the ISA	Authorized officer
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2 NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl, Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016	Thomas, R.M.

1

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication,where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	WO 93 22678 A (MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY) 11 November 1993	1-3,6, 15-17, 19-24, 26,28-30
	see page 4, line 26 - page 5, line 2 see page 19, line 9 - line 15 see page 20, line 7 - line 21 see page 21, line 5 - line 8	
A	see figure 15	32

A	O.F. WEBB ET AL: "Kinetics and response of Pseudomonas fluorescens HK44 biosensor" BIOTECHNOLOGY AND BIOENGINEERING, vol. 54, no. 5, 5 June 1997, pages 491-502, XP002098469 see abstract	32

A	WO 97 06101 A (UK DEFENCE SECRETARY) 20 February 1997	1-5,9, 10,19, 22,23, 26, 28-30, 32-34
	see page 15, line 4 - line 34 see page 16, line 8 - line 18 see page 22, line 20 - page 23, line 8 see figures 6,9	

P,X	WO 98 26277 A (PROLUME) 18 June 1998	1-6, 14-16, 19-24, 26-31
	see page 4, line 25 - page 6, line 2 see page 58, line 11 - line 22 see page 59, line 8 - line 26 see page 86, line 9 - line 12 see page 88, last line - page 89, line 23	
A	see page 92, line 1 - line 28	32-34

T	M.L. SIMPSON ET AL: "Bioluminescent-bioreporter integrated circuits form novel whole-cell biosensors" TIBTECH, vol. 16, August 1998, pages 332-338, XP002098470	

1

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No
PCT/US 98/25295

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9712030 A	03-04-1997	US 5849486 A	15-12-1998
		AU 6968996 A	17-04-1997
		CA 2233238 A	03-04-1997
		CN 1202929 A	23-12-1998
		EP 0852617 A	15-07-1998
WO 9322678 A	11-11-1993	US 5846708 A	08-12-1998
		EP 0638173 A	15-02-1995
		JP 7508831 T	28-09-1995
		US 5653939 A	05-08-1997
WO 9706101 A	20-02-1997	GB 2303847 A	05-03-1997
		AU 6626496 A	05-03-1997
		CA 2228426 A	20-02-1997
		EP 0842113 A	20-05-1998
		GB 2317885 A	08-04-1998
WO 9826277 A	18-06-1998	AU 6012898 A	03-07-1998

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

- ☐ BLACK BORDERS
- ☑ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES
- ☐ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☑ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING
- ☐ SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES
- ☐ COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS
- ☐ GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS
- ☐ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT
- ☐ REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY
- ☐ OTHER: ______________________

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.
As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.